

PA 2087

.B7

1826

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



00003951200









AN  
INTRODUCTION  
TO  
LATIN CONSTRUING;  
OR,  
EASY AND PROGRESSIVE LESSONS FOR READING;  
TO BE USED BY THE PUPIL  
AS SOON AS THE FIRST DECLENSION HAS BEEN COMMITTED  
TO MEMORY,

Adapted to the most Popular Grammars,  
BUT MORE PARTICULARLY TO THAT USED IN  
THE COLLEGE AT ETON;  
AND DESIGNED TO ILLUSTRATE

THE INFLECTION OF THE DECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH, THE RULES  
FOR GENDER, FOR THE PRETERPERFECT TENSE, AND OF SYNTAX;  
HAVING THE QUANTITY OF THOSE SYLLABLES MARKED, ON WHICH  
THE PRONUNCIATION DEPENDS, WITH SUCH DIRECTIONS PRE-  
FIXED, AS WILL SHEW THE MANNER IN WHICH LATIN IS READ  
IN OUR UNIVERSITIES AND PUBLIC SCHOOLS, AND ACCOMPANIED  
WITH QUESTIONS.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

SOME PLAIN RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

BY THE REV. J. BOSWORTH, M.A. F.A.S.

VICAR OF LITTLE HORWOOD, BUCKS;

AUTHOR OF THE ELEMENTS OF ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR,  
LATIN CONSTRUING, &c.

THIRD EDITION.

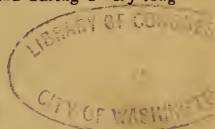
I would not have the attention of the young scholar confined during a very long  
time *only* to the Grammar.—*Knox's Liberal Education.*

*Usus magister est optimus.*—*Cic.*

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR W. SIMPKIN AND R. MARSHALL,  
STATIONERS' HALL COURT, 1UDGATE-STREET.

1826.



PA2087  
B7  
1826

18-10  
W.F. mar  
TO THE

REV. J. CHAMBERLAYNE, B.A.

&c. &c. &c.

THIS LITTLE WORK

IS DEDICATED,

WITH A MOST GRATEFUL ACKNOWLEDGMENT

OF THE ADVANTAGES

WHICH HAVE BEEN DERIVED FROM

THE USEFUL INSTRUCTION,

AND JUDICIOUS ADVICE, THAT, IN EARLY YEARS,

HE SO KINDLY GAVE TO

HIS EVER TRULY OBLIGED,

AND OBEDIENT SERVANT,

JOSEPH BOSWORTH.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

1897

## PREFACE.

---

THE mental and physical powers of children are, at first, in a very weak state. It is by exercise, slowly increased, that the members of the body are strengthened, and the powers of the mind developed. In the manner of cultivating them, there is a striking analogy, as every thing must be gradual. All can see that this is reasonable when applied to the body. In its weakest state, every assistance is afforded; but, as strength is acquired, helps are withdrawn. Too much assistance, at this stage, would be equally prejudicial with too little. In the former case the members would be contracted for want of exercise, and, in the latter, they would be distorted by preternatural exertion. So much assistance is only given as will enable the child to help itself.

The same method should be adopted with the understanding. That study should be selected, which will bring into exercise and gradually unfold all the faculties of the mind. Probably nothing is better

calculated to answer this end, than the study of Latin. The Grammar is regular and systematical; in learning it, the memory and understanding are constantly called into exercise; the former in learning the inflections and rules, and the latter in applying them. The memory, however, is often too much burdened;\* for many boys are kept labouring at their Grammar, till they have passed through it in all its parts; and, for want of exercise in what they have learned, not unfrequently forget the preceding part while they are learning the subsequent. Would it not greatly conduce to the strengthening of their understandings and memories, if they were to read sentences properly selected to exemplify the inflections and rules? That this is not a singular opinion, but one derived from observing the actual wants of children, is evident from the observations of an experienced and valuable writer† on Education, who says, “The young scholar should be introduced to the parsing and construing of some easy Latin, in order to exemplify, by actual reading, the many rules he every day commits to memory. This not only enables him to understand them more clearly, and to remember them better, but renders the study of Grammar, which to a young mind is necessarily dry, somewhat entertaining. I have known boys quite wearied and disgusted with learning Grammar for a whole year without

\* “As the learner advances in his progress, other powers should be exercised besides that of memory.”—See *Hill's Synonymes of the Latin Tongue*.

† See Knox on Education.



any variety. Neither were they so well grounded as others, who had opportunities of applying the various rules by reading."

The following little compilation is arranged with a view to the observations just made, and designed for the use of those who are learning their Grammar.

It is divided into two distinct parts, Etymology and Syntax.

The definitions of the parts of speech in Etymology, and exercises on them, though short, may be found useful to very young pupils.

Questions are added to fix the attention upon the most important matter. The pupil should prepare an answer to every question in his lesson.

That a *copia verborum* might be acquired, with the knowledge of inflection, as many radical words as possible are contained in the examples.

In the parsing notes, on the left-hand page in Etymology, the unchangeable part of the words is printed in Roman letters, and the terminations, which in declining give way to other syllables, are put in Italic, that the young scholar may more easily decline the words.

In the twelfth page of this little work, the learner is shown the necessity of being acquainted with the various terminations of Latin nouns, as the Romans expressed that relation of words by terminations which we do by prepositions. This principle is illustrated by examples through the whole of Etymology.

As the Grammar is understood and becomes familiar, the scholar is taught to use his Dictionary,

first with nouns, then adjectives, pronouns, &c. Thus he is gradually and practically brought to see the real use of his Grammar and Dictionary, and by degrees left to himself.

Though what is said on the composition of words is very brief, it may tend to show the extensive use of that principle.

The gender of nouns, the preterperfect tenses and supines of verbs, may be learned after the grammatical inflections are become familiar, according to the Eton\* plan, or after the declension of nouns, as in Dr. Valpy's Elements of Latin Grammar.

In Syntax the Eton arrangement is followed. The order of words is given, that the pupil's attention may not be diverted from *Concord* and *Government*, the chief objects in Syntax. Very few words are translated, because, the use of the Grammar and Dictionary being familiar, by their aid the English will easily be discovered. In this view, Syntax will be a continued exercise on all that has been previously learned in Etymology.

\* The 9th edition of the **ETON LATIN GRAMMAR**, with Notes by Dr. Mavor, is that to which reference is made throughout this Introduction: but a correct edition of the *ETON Grammar* has been published, with the *quantity of every syllable, and accent of every word*, carefully marked, and also valuable and copious notes, by the REV. T. SMITH, of St. John's College, Cambridge. Another edition of this work has just appeared by T. W. C. EDWARDS, M.A. There is also "A MANUAL OF LATIN GRAMMAR," combining the Eton plan and the advantages of modern improvements, with a preface containing useful directions for acquiring a knowledge of Latin: By John Pye Smith, D.D. This little work is not only admirably perspicuous and concise, but comprehensive.

The few observations on Ellipsis will simplify some of the Rules in Syntax.

The rules for construing are only intended for general directions. Those who wish to see the subject more fully treated, and each rule illustrated by copious examples, may consult a little work called "Latin Construing," which is intended to follow this Introduction.

While in these works every obstacle is removed, they are intended to call forth the latent energies of the mind, by leaving sufficient cause for the pupil's own exertion. It has been a desire to avoid confusing by multiplicity, and to teach one thing at a time. Succeeding rules have, also, been anticipated as little as possible.

It may perhaps be necessary to observe, that at first sight this little compilation may have some appearance of similarity with several introductory books now in use; but upon examination it will be found very different both in matter and arrangement.

*Little Horwood Vicarage,*

*May 14, 1821.*

## PREFACE

TO

### THE THIRD EDITION.

---

MUCH care has been taken in preparing this Edition for the press. An attempt has now been made to explain the general manner of reading Latin in our Universities and Public Schools. Latin is read by accent, which, in words of more than two syllables, is regulated by quantity. No pains have been spared to make the rules for accent and quantity as plain as possible: should illustrative examples to these Rules be deemed necessary, they are sufficiently numerous in the "ORDER, &c." through the whole of Syntax. For practical purposes, it is better to give Rules for accent than to mark the words; because, if the accent were marked over every word in the text, the learner would depend on them without noticing the quantity; and, of course, he would find himself at a loss upon entering on another book, where he had not a similar help: but, being here necessarily accustomed to observe the quantity, and



to accent by the rules, which are universally applicable, he will easily apply them in any book he may subsequently read.

Any suggestion, addressed to the Author or Publishers, for the improvement of another Edition, will be thankfully received.

*Little Horwood Vicarage,*

*Feb. 20, 1826.*

## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>nn.</i> .....	stand for a noun.
<i>m.</i> .....	stands for masculine gender.
<i>f.</i> .....	feminine gender.
<i>n.</i> .....	neuter gender.
<i>c.</i> .....	common gender.
<i>æ, f. 1.</i>	stand for a noun of the feminine gender and first declension.
<i>i, m. 2.</i> .....	masculine gender and second declension.
<i>is, f. 3.</i> .....	feminine gender and third declension.
<i>ûs, m. 4.</i> .....	masculine gender and fourth declension.
<i>ei, f. 5.</i> .....	feminine gender and fifth declension.
<i>nom.</i> .....	stands for the nominative case.
<i>g.</i> .....	genitive case.
<i>d.</i> .....	dative case.
<i>ac.</i> .....	accusative case.
<i>v.</i> .....	vocative case.
<i>ab.</i> .....	ablative case.
<i>s.</i> .....	singular number.
<i>pl.</i> .....	plural number.
<i>adj.</i> .....	an adjective.
<i>comp.</i> .....	in the comparative degree.
<i>sup.</i> .....	in the superlative degree.
<i>pron.</i> .....	a pronoun.



# THE MANNER IN WHICH LATIN IS READ IN OUR UNIVERSITIES AND PUBLIC SCHOOLS.

---

## *On the Sound of the Letters in Latin.*

IN Latin the diphthongs æ and œ must be sounded as *e*; thus, *musæ* and *poena* are pronounced *mu'-se* and *pe'-na*.

*C*, is sounded, as in English, like *s*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*; and like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and consonants: thus, *cicer* is pronounced *si'-ser*; *cæcus*, *se'-kus*; *coenaculum*, *se-nak'-u-lum*; *cuticula*, *ku-tik'-u-la*; and *classicus*, *klas'-si-kus*.

The letter *g* is also sounded as in English. It is hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, and consonants, like *g* in *give*; and soft, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, or another *g* followed by *e*: thus, *gigno* is pronounced *jig'-no*; *gemma*, *jen'-ma*; *agger*, *aj'-jer*.

*Ch* is always sounded like *k*; thus, *chronica* is pronounced *kron'-i-ca*.

The syllables *ti*, *ci*, *si*, *xi*, before a vowel, are pronounced as in the English words *nation*, *precious*, *invasion*, *noxious*; thus, *pretium*, *concio*, *incisio*, and *anxiè*, are pronounced *pre'-shi-um*, *con'-shi-o*, *in-cizh'-i-o*, *ank'-shi-e*: but *ti* at the beginning of a word, and after *s* or *x*, is pronounced like *ti* in *tidy* or *satiety*; as, *istius*, *mixtio*, and *timor*, pronounced *ist'-i-us*, *mix'-ti-o*, and *ti'-mor*.

## *The Division of Words into Syllables.*

A syllable is one distinct sound, and may be either a vowel, a diphthong, or one or more consonants with a vowel.

In Latin the final vowel is always distinctly sounded; indeed there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs: as, *corde*, *lupi*, *pennæ*, *alæ*, *nata*, *nautæ*, which words are divided and read *cor'-de*, *lu'-pi*, *pen'-næ*, *a'-læ*, *na'-ta*, *na'-tæ*; but when the letters *c*, *h*,

How are the diphthongs *æ* and *œ* sounded?

What is the sound of *c* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, & *c*.?

What before *a*, *o*, *u*, & *c*.?

How is *g* sounded before *a*, *o*, *u*, & *c*.?

How before *e*, *i*, *y*, & *c*.?

Like what letter is *ch* sounded?

How are *ti*, *ci*, & *c*. pronounced before a vowel? Give examples.

How is *ti* pronounced at the beginning of a word, and after *s*?

What is a syllable?

Is the final vowel always pronounced in Latin? Give an example.

*g*, *q*, or *s*, are followed by two vowels, they generally form only one syllable : as, *cui*, *huic*, *lingua*, *qua*, *qui*, *quo*, *suadeo*, divided and read *ki*, *hike*, *lin'-gwa*, *kwa*, *kwi*, *kwo*, *swa'-de-o*.

The following observations may be serviceable in dividing words into syllables :

1. A single consonant, between two vowels, must be joined to the latter vowel ; as, *mo'-ræ*, *a'-læ*, *a'-qua* ; except the accent falls on the last syllable but two (ante-penult), then this syllable generally takes the following consonant ; as, *lit'-e-ræ*, *an'-i-ma*, *fil'-i-a*, &c. ; and *x* is joined to the vowel going before it ; as, *ex'-ul*, *ax'-is*. Compound words must also be resolved into their constituent parts ; as, *ab'-est*, *in'-e-o*, &c.

2. Two consonants, between two vowels, are to be separated ; as, *for'-ma*, *ter'-ræ* : but when two consonants can begin a word, they may be sometimes joined to the following syllable ; as, *li'-bris*, *Lu-cré'-ti-i*, &c.

#### *General Rules for Quantity.*

1. One vowel before another, or before *h*, followed by a vowel, is short ; as, *mĕus*, *nĭhil*, &c.

2. The diphthongs, *æ*, *oe*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, are all long ; as, *pōena*, *hāedus*, &c.

3. A vowel before two consonants, or before *j*, *x*, and *z*, is long ; as, *fōrma*, *mājor*, &c.

Every penult not falling under these rules is marked thus :

◌ over a vowel, shows that syllable to be short.

- over a vowel, denotes that syllable to be long.

#### *Rules for Accent.*

Rule I.—In pronouncing Latin words of two syllables, the accent or stress of the voice is always on the *former syllable*, whether it be long or short : as, *hū'-jus*, *hō'-rum*, *mū'-sa*, *bō'-nus*, *pā'-rens*, &c.

How do you pronounce *cui*, *lingua*, &c.?

What is the first rule for dividing words into syllables? How are *moræ*, *exul*, &c. divided?

What is the second rule?

Is one vowel before another long or short?—Is a diphthong long?—Is a vowel, before two consonants, long or short?—What is the mark for a short syllable? A long?

What is accent? What is the mark for accent? Where is the accent, or stress of the voice, in Latin words of two syllables?

Rule II.—In words of three or more syllables, when the last syllable but one (penult) is *long*, that syllable has the accent; as, *ma-gis'-ter*, *mu-sā'-rum*, *ma-gis-trō'-rum*, *do-mi-nō'-rum*, *vi-rum'-que*, &c.: if the last syllable but one be *short*, the accent is on the *preceding* (antepenult) syllable: as, *dom'-i-nus*, *fil'-i-us*, *op'-ē-ris*, *o-per'-i-bus*, *me-li-or'-i-bus*, &c.

Latin is read by accent, which, in words of three or more syllables, is regulated by the quantity of the last syllable but one. When the quantity of the last syllable but one is known, either by the general rules, or by the mark over the vowel, you may ascertain where to place the accent by the two preceding rules. The stress of the voice is on the first syllable of *for'-ma*, *cū'-ra*, *poé'-na*, *mō'-ræ*, *pen'-næ*, *ā'-læ*, *ā'-qua*, *ter'-ræ*, *mū'-læ*, &c., because they are words of two syllables. The accent is on the antepenult, or last syllable but two, in *lit'-ē-ræ*, *me-mor'-i-æ*, *in'-sū-læ*, *an'-i-ma*, &c., because the penult, or last syllable but one, is short: it is on the penult, or last syllable but one, in *li-te-rā'-rum*, *na-tū'-ræ*, *re-gē'-na*, *e-quā'-bus*, *A-lex-an'-dri*, &c., because that syllable is long.

*Examples to illustrate the Rules for Accent, and the Division of Syllables.*

For'-ma lit'-ē-ræ.  
For'-ma li-te-rā'-rum.  
Cu'-ra me-mor'-i-æ.  
Na-tū'-ra fa-bu-lā'-rum.  
Pæ'-na mo'-ræ.  
Pen'-næ a'-læ.  
Rē-gī'-na in'-sū-læ.

A'-qua ter'-ræ.  
An'-i-ma mu'-læ.  
Na'-ta nau'-tæ.  
Fil'-i-æ po-ē-tā'-rum.  
Li-ber-tā'-bus scri'-bæ.  
E-quā'-bus Æ-nē'-æ.  
Men'-sis An-chī'-sæ.

## CHAP. I.—OF NOUNS.

THE learner should carefully observe the ending of Latin words. It is by the ending of the genitive case that the

Where is the accent in words of three or more syllables? Where when the last syllable but one is *short*? Give an example. Which is the penult syllable? Which the antepenult? Where is the accent when the last syllable but one is *long*? Give an example.

How is Latin read? How do you know which syllable to accent? Which syllable is accented in *forma*, *cura*, *moræ*, &c.? Why? Which in *literæ*, *memoriæ*, *insulæ*, &c.? Why? Which in *litarum*, *naturæ*, &c.? Why?

What part of a Latin word should be carefully observed? Why?

declensions are distinguished; and what is expressed in English by *of*, *to*, *for*, *with*, &c. placed before nouns, is denoted in Latin by a difference in the termination; as will be seen by the following example:

Singular.	Plural.
N. Form- <i>a</i> , <i>a</i> form,	N. Form- <i>æ</i> , <i>forms</i> ,
G. Form- <i>æ</i> , <i>of a</i> form,	G. Form- <i>arum</i> , <i>of forms</i> ,
D. Form- <i>æ</i> , <i>to a</i> form,	D. Form- <i>is</i> , <i>to forms</i> ,
A. Form- <i>am</i> , <i>a</i> form,	A. Form- <i>as</i> , <i>forms</i> ,
V. Form- <i>a</i> , <i>O</i> form,	V. Form- <i>æ</i> , <i>O forms</i> ,
A. Form- <i>â</i> , <i>by a</i> form.	A. Form- <i>is</i> , <i>by forms</i> .

Here *æ*, *arum*, &c. annexed to the radical Latin word *Form*, have the same effect as *of a*, *of the*, *to*, or *by*, put before the English word *form*.

When a Latin word ends in *arum*, it will be the genitive plural, and *of* must be placed before the English word, as *musarum*, of songs. If a Latin word end in *æ*, it may be the genitive or dative singular or the nominative or vocative plural, and it must have *of*, or *to*, &c. placed before the English word, as best suits the sense.

Every syllable in Latin should have its full sound; but particular care should be taken distinctly to enunciate the terminating syllables, and to let the stress of the voice fall on the last syllable but one (penult), or the last syllable but two (antepenult), according to the rules of accent.

#### OF A NOUN.

A noun is the name of any thing we can see, touch, or conceive to subsist.

You know that *book*, *pens*, *paper*, *coat*, and *hat*, are nouns, because you can see or touch them. You are also certain that *love* and *respect* are nouns, though you cannot see or touch them, because you can conceive such a thing to subsist as the *love* you have for your parents, and the *respect* you have for your instructors.

When a Latin word ends in *æ*, *is*, *arum*, &c. what must be put before the English? What part of a word should be most distinctly spoken? Where must the stress of the voice or accent always fall in Latin words?

What is a noun? What part of speech is that which expresses the names of whatever you can see, touch, or conceive to subsist?

What part of speech is *book*? Why is it a noun? What part of speech is *love*? How do you know *love* is a noun?

Which are the nouns in these sentences? It is a book. John runs. I have a respect for my instructor and a love for my parents.



## NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

1 Forma litĕræ *	6 Pœna moræ
2 Forma literārum	7 Pennæ alæ
3 Formæ litĕræ	8 Regīna insŭlæ
4 Cura memoriæ	9 Aqua terræ.
5 Natūra fabulārum	

## IRREGULAR NOUNS, &amp;c.†

1 Anīma mulæ	4 Libertābus scribæ
2 Nata nautæ	5 Equābus Ænĕæ
3 Filiæ poētārum	6 Mensis Anchīsæ.

How do you know when a noun is of the first declension? What do you annex to the radical word to form the genitive singular, the genitive and dative plural, &c.? Why does *Anima*, &c. make *Animabus* in the *d.* and *ab. pl.*? How is *Æneas* declined? Have you observed the notes in your grammar? What are they? Where is the accent in *forma*? in *literarum*? *memoriæ*? By what rules do you prove that the accent is on the syllables *for*, *ra*, and *mo*?

## ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING TABLE FOR A NOUN.

— is a noun of the — declension because the genitive case singular ends in —. Declined like —. In the — Number, — Case, — Gender. From —. I decline it, Singular, nom. — g. —. d. — ac. — v. — ab. —; Plural, nom. — g. — d. — ac. — v. — ab. —.

Example. *Literæ* is a noun of the *first* declension because the genitive case singular ends in *æ*; declined like *Musa*: In the *singular* number, *genitive* case, *feminine* gender; from *Litera*. I decline it,

\* If these examples cannot be conveniently construed immediately after the Grammar has been repeated, they may be translated, and the English written down on paper, as an evening's exercise, to be examined by the tutor the following morning, in addition to the declension of a word in that part of the accidence which the pupil is learning. After the translation is corrected, the pupil, with his English translation alone in his hand, should turn it again into Latin. This exercise will be a most effectual means of impressing the words and their inflections on the mind.

† Perhaps it would be better to omit reading the irregular nouns till all the regular inflections of the five declensions are perfectly understood; then the irregular nouns will not be so likely to confuse the pupil.

Nom. *hæc Litera*, a letter: g. *hujus Literæ*, of a letter: d. *huius Literæ*, to a letter: ac. *hanc Literam*, a letter: v. o *Litera*, o letter: ab. *ab hac Literâ*, by a letter. Plural, nom. *hæ Literæ*, letters; g. *harum Literarum*, of letters: d. *his Literis*, to letters: ac. *has Literas*, letters: v. o *Literæ*, o letters; ab. *ab his Literis*, from letters.

When a noun is named to the pupil, he should be taught to go through it in this manner as quickly as possible without interruption.

#### THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NOUNS IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

- 1 *Forma the form literæ of a letter*:—*Forma*, nom. s. *forma*, æ, f. 1:—*Literæ*, g. s. *litera*, æ, f. 1.
- 2 *Forma the form literarum of letters*:—*Forma*, nom. s. *forma*, æ, f. 1:—*Literarum*, g. pl. *litera*, æ, f. 1.
- 3 *Formæ the forms literæ of a letter*:—*Formæ*, nom. pl. *forma*, æ, f. 1:—*Literæ*, g. s. *litera*, æ, f. 1.
- 4 *Cura the care memoriæ of the memory*:—*Cura*, nom. s. *cura*, æ, f. 1:—*Memoriæ*, g. s. *memoria*, æ, f. 1.
- 5 *Natura the nature fabularum of fables*:—*Natura*, nom. s. *natura*, æ, f. 1:—*Fabularum*, g. pl. *fabula*, æ, f. 1.
- 6 *Pœna the punishment moræ of delay*:—*Pœna*, nom. s. *pœna*, æ, f. 1:—*Moræ*, g. s. *mora*, æ, f. 1.
- 7 *Pennæ the quills alæ of the wing*:—*Pennæ*, nom. pl. *penna*, æ, f. 1:—*Alæ*, g. s. *ala*, æ, f. 1.
- 8 *Regina the queen insulæ of an island*:—*Regina*, nom. s. *regina*, æ, f. 1:—*Insulæ*, g. s. *insula*, æ, f. 1.
- 9 *Aqua the water terræ of the earth*:—*Aqua*, nom. s. *aqua*, æ, f. 1:—*Terræ*, g. s. *terra*, æ, f. 1.

#### IRREGULAR NOUNS, &c.

- 1 *Anima the breath mulæ of a mule*:—*Anima*, nom. s. *anima*, æ, f. 1: The d. and ab. pl. end in *abus* to distinguish it from the d. and ab. pl. of *Animus*:—*Mulæ*, g. s. *mula*, æ, f. 1:—the d. and ab. pl. end in *abus*.
- 2 *Nata the daughter nautæ of a sailor*:—*Nata*, nom. s. *nata*, æ, f. 1:—*Nautæ*, g. s. *nauta*, æ, m. 1.
- 3 *Filiæ the daughters poetarum of artists*:—*Filiæ*, nom. pl. *filia*, æ, f. 1:—*Poetarum*, g. pl. *poeta*, æ, m. 1.
- 4 *Libertabus to the female servants scribæ of a writer*:—*Libertabus*, d. pl. *liberta*, æ, f. 1:—*Scribæ*, g. s. *scriba*, æ, m. 1.
- 5 *Equabus with the mares Æneæ of Æneas\**:—*Equabus*, ab. pl. *equa*, æ, f. 1:—*Æneæ*, g. s. *Æneas*, æ, m. 1.
- 6 *Mensis to the tables Anchisæ of Anchises*:—*Mensis*, d. pl. *mensa*, æ, f. 1:—*Anchisæ*, g. s. *Anchises*, æ\*, m. 1.

---

\* See Edwards's or Mavor's Notes to the Eton Latin Grammar, under *musa*; Valpy's under *res*; and Ruddiman's under *penna*.



## NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

- 1 Libris magistri
- 2 Cultro fabri
- 3 Ministris Alexandri
- 4 Amīcus popŭli
- 5 Anno Domīni
- 6 Humērus equi
- 7 Socēro puēri
- 8 Pericŭlum auri
- 9 Telo belli
- 10 Initio praelii
- 11 Muri hortōrum
- 12 Ostia templōrum
- 13 Exemplis studii
- 14 Cura peculii *Virg.*

### IRREGULAR NOUNS, &c.

- 1 Domus Dei
- 2 Rami ficōrum
- 3 Filio Curtii
- 4 Delicta vulgōrum
- 5 Alvo hædi
- 6 Libēri Lucretii.

Which is the long syllable in *Ministris*? (Example 3.) Why is *i* long? Where is the accent or stress of the voice? By what rule? How do you know that *i* is long in *delicta*? (Example 4.) Why is the accent on the syllable *lict*, and on *hu* in *humērus*? (Example 6.)

How do you know when a noun is of the second declension?

What do you annex to the radical word to form the genitive, dative, and accusative singular, and the nominative, genitive, and ablative plural? What is the note upon *puer*, &c.?

What do *Deus*, *Filius*, and *Curtius* make in the vocative case? What cases are alike in all neuter nouns, and in what do these cases end in the plural?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NOUNS IN THE SECOND  
DECLENSION.

1 *Libris with the books magistri of the master*:—*Libris*, *ab. pl.* *liber*, *ri*, *m. 2*:—*Magistri*, *g. s.* *magister*, *ri*, *m. 2*.

2 *Cultro with the knife fabri of the workman*:—*Cultro*, *ab. s.* *Culter*, *ri*, *m. 2*:—*Fabri*, *g. s.* *faber*, *ri*, *m. 2*.

3 *Ministris to the servants Alexandri of Alexander, the king of Macedon*:—*Ministris*, *d. pl.* *minister*, *ri*, *m. 2*:—*Alexandri*, *g. s.* *Alexander*, *ri*, *m. 2*.

4 *Amicus the friend populi of the people*:—*Amicus*, *nom. s.* *amicus*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Populi*, *g. s.* *populus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

5 *Anno in the year Domini of the Lord*:—*Anno*, *ab. s.* *annus*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Domini*, *g. s.* *Dominus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

6 *Humerus the shoulder equi of a horse*:—*Humerus*, *nom. s.* *humerus*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Equi*, *g. s.* *equus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

7 *Socero to the father in law pueri of the child*:—*Socero*, *d. s.* *socer*, *eri*, *m. 2*:—*Pueri*, *g. s.* *puer*, *ëri*, *m. 2*.

*Note.* Nouns of the second declension ending in *er* lose *e* in declining, except in *puer*, *socer*, and a few others. See Edwards's or Mavor's Notes to the Eton Grammar, and Ruddiman's Grammar in this declension.

8 *Periculum the danger auri of gold*:—*Periculum*, *nom. s.* *periculum*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Auri*, *g. s.* *aurum*, *i*, *n. 2*.

9 *Telo with a weapon belli of war*:—*Telo*, *ab. s.* *telum*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Belli*, *g. s.* *bellum*, *i*, *n. 2*.

10 *Initio to the beginning praelii of battle*:—*Initio*, *d. s.* *initium*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Praelii*, *g. s.* *prælium*, *i*, *n. 2*.

11 *Muri the walls hortorum of gardens*:—*Muri*, *nom. pl.* *murus*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Hortorum*, *g. pl.* *hortus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

12 *Ostia the doors templorum of the temples*:—*Ostia*, *nom. pl.* *ostium*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Templorum*, *g. pl.* *templum*, *i*, *n. 2*.

13 *Exemplis with the examples studii of study*:—*Exemplis*, *ab. pl.* *exemplum*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Studii*, *g. s.* *studium*, *i*, *n. 2*.

14 *Cura the care, peculii of property*:—*Cura*, *nom. s.* *cura*, *æ*, *f. 1*:—*Peculii*, *g. s.* *peculium*, *i*, *n. 2*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS, &c.

1 *Domus the house Dei of God*:—*Domus*, *nom. s.* *domus*, *i*, *f. 2*:—*Dei*, *g. s.* *Deus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

2 *Rami the branches ficorum of fig-trees*:—*Rami*, *nom. pl.* *ramus*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Ficorum*, *g. pl.* *figus*, *i*, *f. 2*.

3 *Filio to the son Curtii of Curtius*:—*Filio*, *d. s.* *filius*, *i*, *m. 2*:—*Curtii*, *g. s.* *Curtius*, *i*, *m. 2*.

4 *Delicta the faults vulgorum of the common people*:—*Delicta*, *nom. pl.* *delictum*, *i*, *n. 2*:—*Vulgorum*, *g. pl.* *vulgus*, *i*, *n.* and *m. 2*.

5 *Alvo in the stomach hædi of a kid*:—*Alvo*, *ab. s.* *alvus*, *i*, *f. 2*:—*Hædi*, *g. s.* *hædus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

6 *Liberi the children Lucretii of Lucretius*:—*Liberi*, *nom. pl.* the *g. is orum*; it has no singular:—*Lucretii*, *g. s.* *Lucretius*, *i*, *m. 2*.

## NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, &amp;c.

- 1 Finis sermōnis
- 2 Cives Romæ
- 3 Pedibus gigantis
- 4 Mos homīnum
- 5 Flores horti
- 6 Numa Pompilius rex Romanōrum *Eut.*
- 7 Amor matris
- 8 Laude patris
- 9 Origīne mundi
- 10 Defensōrem pudicitiae *Eut.*
- 11 Patriæ conditor
- 12 Munera fortunæ
- 13 Onera jugi
- 14 Corpora leonum
- 15 Luce solis
- 16 Cura parentum
- 17 Nomīni hominis
- 18 Lac vaccæ
- 19 Corde lupi
- 20 Hæredi regni
- 21 Dux hostium.

What do all nouns of the third declension make in the genitive singular?

What must be added to the radical word to make the dative and ablative plural, &c. &c.?

Is the *a* in *gigantis* (Example 3.) long or short? Why? Where is the accent in *gigantis*? By what rule do you prove that the accent is on the syllable *gan*?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD  
DECLENSION, &c.

- 1 *Finis the end sermonis of a speech*:—*Finis, nom. s. finis, is, c. 3*:  
—*Sermonis, g. s. sermo, ōnis, m. 3.*
- 2 *Cives the citizens Romæ of Rome*:—*Cives, nom. pl. civis, is, c. 3*:  
—*Romæ, g. s. Roma, æ, f. 1.*
- 3 *Pedibus by the feet gigantis of a giant*:—*Pedibus, ab. pl. pes, ēdis, m. 3*:—*Gigantis, g. s. gigas, ntis, m. 3.*
- 4 *Mos the manner hominum of men*:—*Mos, nom. s. mos, ris, m. 3*:  
—*Hominum, g. pl. homo, ĩnis, c. 3.*
- 5 *Flores the flowers horti of the garden*:—*Flores, nom. pl. flos, ris, m. 3*:  
*Horti, g. s. hortus, i, m. 2.*
- 6 *Numa Pompilius Numa Pompilius, rex the king Romanorum of the Romans*:—*Numa, nom. s. Numa, æ, m. 1*:—*Pompilius, nom. s. Pompilius, i, m. 2*:—*Rex, nom. s. rex, gis, m. 3*:—*Romanorum, g. pl. Romani, orum, m. 2.*
- 7 *Amor the love matris of a mother*:—*Amor, nom. s. amor, ōris, m. 3*:—*Matris, g. s. mater, ris, f. 3.*
- 8 *Laude by the praise patris of a father*:—*Lande, ab. s. laus, dis, f. 3*:—*Patris, g. s. pater, ris, m. 3.*
- 9 *Origine from the beginning mundi of the world*:—*Origine, ab. s. origo, ĩnis, f. 3*:—*Mundi, g. s. mundus, i, m. 2.*
- 10 *Defensorem the defender pudicitia of modesty*:—*Defensorem ac. s. defensor, ōris, m. 3*:—*Pudicitia, g. s. pudicitia, æ, f. 1.*
- 11 *Conditor the founder patriæ of a country*:—*Conditor, nom. s. conditor, ōris, m. 3*:—*Patriæ, g. s. patria, æ, f. 1.*
- 12 *Munera the gifts fortunæ of fortune*:—*Munera, nom. pl. munus, ěris, n. 3*:—*Fortunæ, g. s. fortuna, æ, f. 1.*
- 13 *Onera the burdens jugi of a yoke*:—*Onera, nom. pl. onus, ěris, n. 3*:—*Jugi, g. s. jugum, i, n. 2.*
- 14 *Corpora the bodies leonum of lions*:—*Corpora, nom. pl. corpus, ōris, n. 3*:—*Leonum, g. pl. leo, ōnis, m. 3.*
- 15 *Luce by the light solis of the sun*:—*Luce, ab. s. lux, cis, f. 3*:—*Solis, g. s. sol, tis, m. 3.*
- 16 *Cura the care parentum of parents*:—*Cura, nom. s. cura, æ, f. 1*:  
—*Parentum, g. pl. parens, tis, c. 3.*
- 17 *Nomini to the name hominis of a man*:—*Nomini, d. s. nomen, ĩnis, n. 3*:—*Hominis, g. s. homo, ĩnis, c. 3.*
- 18 *Lac the milk vaccæ of a cow*:—*Lac, nom. s. lac, tis, n. 3*:—*Vaccæ, g. s. vacca, æ, f. 1.*
- 19 *Corde with the heart lupi of a wolf*:—*Corde, ab. s. cor, dis, n. 3*:—*Lupi, g. s. lupus, i, m. 2.*
- 20 *Hæredi to the heir regni of a kingdom*:—*Hæredi, d. s. hæres, dis, c. 3*:—*Regni, g. s. regnum, i, n. 2.*
- 21 *Dux a leader hostium of the enemies*:—*Dux, nom. s. dux, cis, c. 3*:—*Hostium, g. pl. hostis, is, c. 3.*

## IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, &amp;c.

## OF THE GENITIVE PLURAL, &amp;c.

Most words of the third Declension make the genitive plural in *um*; except,

1. Nouns ending in *es*, or *is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, make the genitive plural to end in *ium*.

1	Civium potentiam	<i>Nep.</i>
2	Urbis Romæ territorio	
3	Auri fames	<i>Virg.</i>
4	Pelāgi rupes	<i>Virg.</i>
5	Fame vulpis	
6	Pellibus ovium.	

2. Neuter nouns ending in *e*, *al*, *ar*, make *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *ium* in the genitive.

1	Ovīlis agno
2	Vis retium
3	Animalium vita.

3. Words of one syllable ending in *as*, and in *x*, or *s*, after a consonant, have *ium* in the g. pl.; and words of more than one syllable in *ns*; but these are often contracted into *um*, as *parentum*, &c.

1	Mas avium	
2	Gentis cives	<i>Nep.</i>
3	Urbium mœnia	<i>Nep.</i>
4	Natūra montis	<i>Cæs.</i>
5	Rex Vejentium Tolumnius.	<i>Eut.</i>

## GREEK NOUNS.

1	Olympias mater Alexandri	<i>Nep.</i>
2	Lampāda Turni	<i>Virg.</i>
3	Phyllidis amor.	<i>Ov.</i>

What do nouns ending in *is*, and not increasing in the genitive, make in the genitive plural? Give some examples.

What neuter nouns make *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nom. pl. &c. and *ium* in the genitive plural?

What other words make *ium* in the genitive plural?

Do all words of more than one syllable ending in *ns*, make the genitive plural in *ium*?

What do you observe in the declining of Greek nouns in this declension?



THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF IRREGULAR NOUNS OF  
THE THIRD DECLENSION, &c.

1 *Potentiam the power civium of the citizens*:—*Potentiam*, *ac. s.* *potentia*, æ, f. 1:—*Civium*, *g. pl.* *civis*, is, c. 3.

2 *Territorio to the territory urbis of the city Romæ Rome*:—*Territorio*, *d. s.* *territorium*, i, n. 2:—*Urbis*, *g. s.* *urbs*, is, f. 3:—*Romæ*, *g. s.* *Roma*, æ, f. 1.

3 *Fames the hunger or desire auri of gold*:—*Fames*, *nom. s.* *fames*, is, f. 3:—*Auri*, *g. s.* *aurum*, i, n. 2.

4 *Rupes the rocks pelagi of the sea*:—*Rupes*, *nom. pl.* *rupes*, is, f. 3:—*Pelagi*, *g. s.* *pelagus*, i, n. 2.

5 *Fame by the hunger vulpis of a fox*:—*Fame*, *ab. s.* *fames*, is, f. 3:—*Vulpis*, *g. s.* *vulpes*, is, f. 3.

6 *Pellibus with the skins ovium of sheep*:—*Pellibus*, *ab. pl.* *pellis*, is, f. 3:—*Ovium*, *g. pl.* *ovis*, is, f. 3.

1 *Agno to a lamb ovilis of the fold*:—*Agno*, *d. s.* *agnus*, i, m. 2:—*Ovilis*, *g. s.* *ovile*, is, n. 3.

2 *Vis the strength retium of the nets*:—*Vis*, *nom. s.* *vis*, *g. vim*, *ac. vi*, *ab. Pl. vires*, ium, f. 3:—*Retium*, *g. pl.* *rete*, is, n. 3.

3 *Vita the life animalium of animals*:—*Vita*, *nom. s.* *vita*, æ, f. 1:—*Animalium*, *g. pl.* *animal*, ālis, n. 3.

1 *Mas the male avium of birds*:—*Mas*, *nom. s.* *mas*, ris, m. 3:—*Avium*, *g. pl.* *avis*, is, f. 3.

2 *Cives the citizens gentis of the nation*:—*Cives*, *ac. pl.* *civis*, is, c. 3:—*Gentis*, *g. s.* *gens*, tis, f. 3.

3 *Mœnia the walls urbium of the cities*:—*Mœnia*, *ac. pl.* *mœnia*, um, n. 3, no singular;—*Urbium*, *g. pl.* *urbs*, is, f. 3.

4 *Natura the nature montis of the mountain*:—*Natura*, *nom. s.* *natura*, æ, f. 1:—*Montis*, *g. s.* *mons*, tis, m. 3.

5 *Tolumnius Tolumnius, rex the king Vejentium of the Vejentes*:—*Tolumnius*, *nom. s.* *Tolumnius*, i, m. 2:—*Rex*, *nom. s.* *rex*, gis, m. 3:—*Vejentium*, *g. pl.* *Vejens*, tis, m. 3.

GREEK NOUNS, &c.

1 *Olympias Olympias, mater the mother Alexandri of Alexander*:—*Olympias*, *nom. s.* *Olympias*, ādis, f. See Edwards's or Mavor's Notes to the Eton Grammar, Valpy, and Ruddiman in the Notes on Greek words in this declension:—*Mater*, *nom. s.* *mater*, ris, f. 3:—*Alexandri*, *g. s.* *Alexander*, ri, m. 2.

2 *Lampada the torch Turni of Turnus*:—*Lampada*, *ac. s.* *Lampas*, ādis or ādos. See Edwards's or Mavor's Notes to the Eton Grammar. *Turni*, *g. s.* *Turnus*, i, m. 2.

3 *Amor the love Phyllidis of Phyllis*:—*Amor*, *nom. s.* *amor*, ōris, m. 3:—*Phyllidis*, *g. s.* *Phyllis*, īdis or īdos, f. 3. See Eton Notes, &c.



## NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION, &amp;c.

1	Versus Simonīdis	<i>Phæd.</i>
2	Graduum templi	<i>Eut.</i>
3	Strepītu pedum	
4	Aspectu urbis	
5	Metus popŭli	
6	Terræ motus	
7	Luctus fœminārum	
8	Sonītu tubæ	
9	Ortus amicitiae	
10	Casu nivis	<i>Liv.</i>
11	Agitatio fluctuum	
12	Numērum senatōrum	<i>Eut.</i>
13	Dolor artuum	
14	Lusus natūræ.	

## IRREGULAR NOUNS, &amp;c.

- 1 Sagittam arcŭs
- 2 Manus puēri
- 3 Cornībus tauri
- 4 Domus fratris
- 5 Specŭbus ferārum
- 6 Rami quercŭs.

What is the genitive case singular of all nouns in the fourth declension?

What added to the radical word forms the genitive and dative plural, &c.?

What does *arcus* make in the ablative plural? Are nouns in *u* declined in the singular number? What gender are they? Decline the plural.

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NOUNS IN THE FOURTH  
DECLENSION, &c.

1 *Versus the verses Simonidis of Simonides*:—Versus, *nom. pl. ver-*  
*sus*, ūs, m. 4:—Simonidis, *g. s. Simonides*, is, m. 3.

2 *Graduum of the steps templi of a temple*:—Graduum, *g. pl. gra-*  
*du*, ūs, m. 4:—Templi, *g. s. templum*, i, n. 2.

3 *Streptu with the noise pedum of the feet*:—Streptu, *ab. s. stre-*  
*pitu*, ūs, m. 4:—Pedum, *g. pl. pes*, dis, m. 3.

4 *Aspectu in the sight urbis of the city*:—Aspectu, *ab. s. aspectus*,  
ūs, m. 4:—Urbis, *g. s. urbs*, is, f. 3.

5 *Metus a fear populi of the people*:—Metus, *nom. s. metus*, ūs,  
m. 4:—Populi, *g. s. populus*, i, m. 2.

6 *Motus a violent motion terræ of the earth, or an earthquake*:—mo-  
*tus*, *nom. s. motus*, ūs, m. 4:—Terræ, *g. s. terra*, æ, f. 1.

7 *Luctus the mourning fœminarum of women*:—Luctus, *nom. s.*  
*luctus*, ūs, m. 4: Fœminarum, *g. pl. fœmina*, æ, f. 1.

8 *Sonitu by the sound tubæ of a trumpet*:—Sonitu, *ab. s. sonitus*,  
ūs, m. 4:—Tubæ, *g. s. tuba*, æ, f. 1.

9 *Ortus the rising amicitiae of friendship*:—Ortus, *nom. s. ortus*, ūs,  
m. 4:—Amicitiae, *g. s. amicitia*, æ, f. 1.

10 *Casu by a fall nivis of snow*:—Casu, *ab. s. casus*, ūs, m. 4:—Ni-  
*vis*, *g. s. nix*, vis, f. 3.

11 *Agitatio the motion fluctuum of the wares*:—Agitatio, *nom. s.*  
*agitatio*, ōnis, f. 3:—Fluctuum, *g. pl. fluctus*, ūs, m. 4.

12 *Numerum the number senatorum of senators*:—Numerum, *ac. s.*  
*numerus*, i, m. 2:—Senatorum, *g. pl. senator*, ōris, m. 3.

13 *Dolor the pain artuum of the joints*:—Dolor, *nom. s. dolor*, ōris,  
m. 3:—Artuum, *g. pl. artus*, ūs, m. 4, it makes *ubus* in the *ab. pl.*  
See Edwards's, or Mavor's Eton Notes, and Ruddiman's Grammar.

14 *Lusus the sport naturæ of nature*:—Lusus, *nom. s. lusus*, ūs,  
m. 4:—Naturæ, *g. s. natura*, æ, f. 1.

IRREGULAR NOUNS, &c.

1 *Sagittam an arrow arcûs of the bow*:—Sagittam, *ac. s. sagitta*, æ,  
f. 1:—Arcûs, *g. s. arcus*, ūs, m. 4. It makes *arcubus* in the *d.* and  
*ab. pl.* See Mavor's Eton Gr., and Ruddiman's: it is sometimes of  
the second declension.

2 *Manus a hand pueri of a boy*:—Manus, *nom. s. manus*, ūs, f. 4:  
—Pueri, *g. s. puer*, ĕri, m. 2.

3 *Cornibus with the horns tauri of a bull*:—Cornibus, *ab. pl. in-*  
*declinable* in the *s. cornua*, um, see Eton Notes:—Tauri, *g. s. tau-*  
*rus*, i, m. 2.

4 *Domus the house fratris of a brother*:—Domus, *nom. s. domus*,  
ūs, f. 4; also declined *domus*, i, m. 2. See Mavor's Notes to Eton  
Grammar, p. 70; and Ruddiman's under this declension:—Fratris,  
*g. s. frater*, ris, m. 3.

5 *Specubus to the dens ferarum of wild beasts*:—Specubus, *d. pl.*  
*specus*, ūs, m. 4:—Ferarum, *g. pl. fera*, æ, f. 1.

6 *Rami the branches quercûs of an oak*:—Rami, *nom. pl. ramus*, i,  
m. 2:—Quercûs, *g. s. quercus*, ūs, f. 4. It makes *ubus* in the *d.*  
and *ab. pl.* See Mavor's Eton Notes, &c.

## NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION, &amp;c.

1	Auctōres rerum	
2	Acies falcis	
3	Spes salūtis	
4	Auribus regis	<i>Nep.</i>
5	Spem veniæ	<i>Hor.</i>
6	Lucius Tarquinius Superbus	<i>Eut.</i>
7	Species oris	
8	Titus Quintius dictātor	<i>Eut.</i>
9	Lucretiæ patrem	<i>Eut.</i>
10	Equitātus hostium.*	<i>Nep.</i>

## IRREGULAR NOUNS, &amp;c.

1	Soror uxōris	
2	Filius Cimōnis	<i>Nep.</i>
3	Diēbus Virgīlii	
4	Parentes muliēris	
5	Antiquitāte genēris	<i>Nep.</i>
6	Dignitas tribunōrum.	<i>Eut.</i>

How do you know when a noun is of the fifth declension? In those words which have a *g. pl.*, what do you annex to the radical word to form it? also the dative, &c.?

Which syllable is accented in *Auctores*? (Example 1.) Which in *patrem*? (Example 9.)

\* The pupil, now understanding the regular inflection of nouns, will with ease read again the regular examples to each declension. After this second reading of the regular nouns, he may proceed to construe and parse the irregular nouns under each declension; or the irregular nouns might be omitted till the inflection of regular verbs be known. This must be left to the judicious instructor, who will best determine which method is to be preferred.

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NOUNS IN THE FIFTH  
DECLENSION, &c.

1 *Auctores the authors rerum of things* :—Auctores, *nom. pl.* auctor, ōris, *m.* 3 :—Rerum, *g. pl.* res, ei, *f.* 5.

*Note.* Very few words in the fifth declension have a plural number. See Mavor's Notes to the Eton Grammar, and Ruddiman's.

2 *Acies the edge falcis of a sickle* :—Acies, *nom. s.* acies, ēi, *f.* 5 :—Falcis, *g. s.* falx, cis, *f.* 3.

3 *Spes the hope salutis of safety* :—Spes, *nom. s.* spes, ei, *f.* 5 :—Salutis, *g. s.* salus, ūtis, *f.* 3.

4 *Auribus to the ears regis of the king* :—Auribus, *d. pl.* auris, is, *f.* 3 :—Regis, *g. s.* rex, gis, *m.* 3.

5 *Spem the hope veniæ of pardon* :—Spem, *ac. s.* spes, ei, *f.* 5 :—Veniæ, *g. s.* venia, æ, *f.* 1.

6 *Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, Lucius Tarquinius the proud, (the name of the 7th and last king of Rome)* :—Lucius, *nom. s.* Lucius, i, *m.* 2 :—Tarquinius, *nom. s.* Tarquinius, i, *m.* 2 :—Superbus, (*the proud,*) *nom. s.* Superbus, i, *m.* 2.

*Note.* These have no plural number. See Edwards's or Mavor's Eton Notes.

7 *Species the form oris of the mouth* :—Species, *nom. s.* species, ēi, *f.* 5 :—Oris, *g. s.* os, ris, *n.* 3.

8 *Titus Quintius Titus Quintius dictator the dictator* :—Titus, *nom. s.* Titus, i, *m.* 2 :—Quintius, *nom. s.* Quintius, i, *m.* 2 :—Dictator, *nom. s.* dictator, ōris, *m.* 3.

9 *Patrem the father Lucretiæ of Lucretia* :—Patrem, *ac. s.* pater, ris, *m.* 3 :—Lucretiæ, *g. s.* Lucretia, æ, *f.* 1.

10 *Equitatus the cavalry hostium of enemies* :—Equitatus, *nom. s.* equitatus, ūs, *m.* 4 :—Hostium, *g. pl.* hostis, is, *c.* 3.

IRREGULAR NOUNS, &c.

1 *Soror the sister uxoris of a wife* :—Soror, *nom. s.* soror, ōris, *f.* 3 :—Uxoris, *g. s.* uxor, ōris, *f.* 3.

2 *Filius the son Cimonis of Cimon* :—Filius, *nom. s.* filius, i, *m.* 2 :—Cimonis, *g. s.* Cimon, ōnis, *m.* 3.

3 *Diebus in the days Virgilii of Virgil* :—Diebus, *ab. pl.* dies, ēi, *m.* 5 :—Virgilii, *g. s.* Virgilius, i, *m.* 2.

4 *Parentes the parents mulieris of a woman* :—Parentes, *ac. pl.* parens, tis, *c.* 3 :—Mulieris, *g. s.* mulier, ēris, *f.* 3.

5 *Antiquitate by the antiquity generis of the family* :—Antiquitate, *ab. s.* antiquitas, ātis, *f.* 3 :—Generis, *g. s.* genus, ēris, *n.* 3.

6 *Dignitas the dignity tribunorum of the tribunes* :—Dignitas, *nom. s.* dignitas, ātis, *f.* 3 :—Tribunorum, *g. pl.* tribunus, i, *m.* 2.

SOME IRREGULARITIES IN NOUNS NOT PREVIOUSLY  
NOTICED.

The genitive plural of the four first declensions is sometimes contracted.

1	Pater Deûm	
2	Divitiis agricôlâm	
3	Reipublĭcæ procuratio	<i>Nep.</i>
4	Religiōnem jurisjurandi	<i>Cæs.</i>
5	Morte patrisfamilias	<i>Cic.</i>

Some nouns have no singular: they are then declined like the plurals of their respective declensions.

1	Lux Cælōrum	
2	Mœnĭbus urbis	
3	Gloria majōrum	
4	Armōrum fulgor	<i>Hor.</i>
5	Castris hostium	
6	Amor divitiārum	
7	Fratris libĕros	
8	Ope precum	
9	Idĭbus Januarii	<i>Cæs.</i>
10	Kalendis Januarii	<i>Sal.</i>

A noun derived from a proper name, and denoting extraction, is called a Patronymic noun. Patronymic names of men end in *des*, and of women in *is*, *as*, or *ne*.

1	Heros Priamĭdes Helĕnus	<i>Virg.</i>
2	Æacĭdæ telo	<i>Virg.</i>
3	Cassandrâ Priameĭde	<i>Ov.</i>
4	Æetias Medĕa	<i>Ov.</i>
5	Nerĭne Galatĕa	<i>Virg.</i>
6	Nereĭdum matri	<i>Virg.</i>

What case is sometimes contracted? Give an example. Decline *respublica*, *jusjurandum*, &c.

How are nouns that have no singular declined? Decline *arma*, *ops*, &c.

What are patronymic nouns? In what do the patronymic names of men end? Of women? Decline *Æucides*.



THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF SOME IRREGULAR  
NOUNS, &c.

1 *Pater the father* Deûm of the Gods:—Pater, *nom. s.* pater, *ris*, *m. 3*:—Deûm, *g. pl.* contracted for Deorum, Deus, *i*, *m. 2*.

2 *Divitiis with the riches* agricolûm of farmers:—Divitiis, *ab. pl.* divitiæ, ârum, *f. 1*:—Agricolûm, *g. pl.* contracted for agriculturalum, agricola, æ, *c. 1*.

3 *Procuratio the administration* reipublicæ of the commonwealth:—Procuratio, *nom. s.* procuratio, ònis, *f. 3*:—Reipublicæ, *g. s.* respública, *g. reipublicæ*, *ac. rempublicam*, *f. 5* and *1*.

4 *Religionem the reverential fear* jurisjurandi of an oath:—Religionem, *ac. s.* religio, ònis, *f. 3*:—Jurisjurandi, *g. s.* jusjurandum, *i*, *n. 3* and *2*.

5 *Morte by the death* patrisfamilias of the father of a family:—Morte, *ab. s.* mors, *tis*, *f. 3*:—Patrisfamilias, *g. s.* paterfamilias, *g. patrisfamilias*, *m. 3* and *1*:—It is also declined *nom.* Paterfamilia, *g. patrisfamilia*, *d. patrifamilia*, &c.

1 *Lux the light* cælorum of the heavens:—Lux, *nom. s.* lux, *cis*, *f. 3*:—Cælorum, *g. pl.* cælum, *i*, *n. 2*: it is in the plural cæli, cælorum, *m. 2*: like the plural of dominus.

2 *Mœnibus by the walls* urbis of the city:—Mœnibus, *ab. pl.* mœnia, *um*, *n. 3*:—Urbis, *g. s.* urbs, *is*, *f. 3*.

3 *Gloria the glory* majorum of ancestors:—Gloria, *nom. s.* gloria, æ, *f. 1*:—Majorum, *g. pl.* majores, *um*, *m. 3*.

4 *Fulgor the glittering* armorum of arms:—Fulgor, *nom. s.* fulgor, òris, *m. 3*:—Armorum, *g. pl.*: it has no singular, but in the plural it is arma, òrum, *n. 2*, like the plural of regnum.

5 *Castris by the camps* hostium of enemies:—Castris, *ab. pl.* castra, òrum, *n. 2*:—Hostium, *g. pl.* hostis, *is*, *c. 3*.

6 *Amor the love* divitiarum of riches:—Amor, *nom. s.* amor, òris, *m. 3*:—Divitiarum, *g. pl.* divitiæ, ârum, *f. 1*: it has no singular.

7 *Liberos the children* fratris of a brother:—Liberos, *ac. pl.*: it has no *s.* but is declined in the *pl.* like magister. Liberi, òrum, *m. 2*:—Fratris, *g. s.* frater, *ris*, *m. 3*.

8 *Ope by the power* precum of prayers:—Ope, *ab. s.*: it has only 3 cases in the *s.*, *g.* opis, *ac.* opem, *ab.* ope. The *pl.* is regular, as opes, *um*, *ibus*, &c.:—Precum, *g. pl.*: it is declined exactly like opis.

9 *Idibus on the ides* Januarii of January, (or on the 13th of January:)—Idibus, *ab. pl.* Idus, *num*, *ibus*, *m. 4*. no *s.* Januarii, *g. s.* Januarius, *i*, *m. 2*.

10 *Kalendis on the calends* Januarii of January, (or on the 1st of January:)—Kalendis, *ab. pl.* Kalendæ, ârum, *f. 1*. no singular:—Januarii, *g. s.* Januarius, *i*, *m. 2*.

1 *Heros the hero* Helenus Helenus, Priamides the son of Priam:—Heros, *nom. s.* Heros, òis, *m. 3*:—Helenus, *nom. s.* Helenus, *i*, *m. 2*:—Priamides, *nom. s.* Priamides, *is*, *m. 3*. See Edwards's, and Mavor's Notes on the Eton Grammar under the first declension.

2 *Telo with the sword* Æacidæ of the son, or grandson of Æacus, that is Achilles:—Telo, *ab. s.* telum, *i*, *n. 2*:—Æacidæ, *g. s.* Æacides, æ, *m. 1. d. æ*, *ac. en*, &c.

3 *Cassandrâ* by *Cassandra Priameide the daughter of Priam*:—*Cassandrâ*, *ab. s. Cassandra*, æ, f. 1:—*Priameide*, *ab. s. Priameis*, ïdis, f. 3.

4 *Medea Medea, Æetias the daughter of Æetia*:—*Medea*, *nom. s. Medea*, æ, f. 1:—*Æetias*, *nom. s. Æetias*, ädos, f. 1, or *Æetis*, ïdos, f. 3.

5 *Galatea Galatea Nerine the daughter of Nereus*:—*Galatea*, *v. s. Galatea*, æ, f. 1:—*Nerine*, *v. s. Nerine*, es, f. 1. See Eton Notes under first declension: it is also of the third declension, *Nereis*, ïdis, f. 3:—the *pl.* is *Nereïdes*, *um.*

6 *Matri to the mother Nereidum of the Nereids, or to Doris who is the mother of the Nereids*:—*Matri*, *d. s. mater*, ris, f. 3:—*Nereidum*, *g. pl. Nereis*, ïdis, f. 3.—*plural Nereides*, *um.*

## Use of the Dictionary.

THE Dictionary\* should now come in use.

The dictionary is to show the signification of words, in their most simple form, and the Grammar, the inflection of those words; and, therefore, both are necessary for the acquisition of a language. Before a word can be found in the dictionary, all the terminating syllables annexed to the radical word by declining, must be cast off, or changed for the nominative case in nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the first person singular of the present tense indicative mood in verbs.

The word being cleared of inflections will be readily found in the dictionary, by looking for the three first let-

\* A good Dictionary for a beginner is *Tyronis Thesaurus*, or *Entick's New Latin-English Dictionary*, revised by W. Crakelt. This will be sufficient for the commencement; or, if it should be desirable, the English part, called the *English-Latin Dictionary*, may be had with the *Tyronis Thesaurus*. In these two volumes, bound together, the student will find every thing he wants, at least for some years after his commencement. The price of both, bound together, is about 10s. 6d.

There has recently appeared a new *Tyronis Thesaurus*, by the Rev. J. W. Niblock. This work contains the irregular preterperfects, participles, &c., and gives the words from which they are derived. When the Addenda are embodied in the text, as will no doubt be the case in a second edition, this work will be by far the best for general use; but particularly for beginners.

ters at the top of the page, and down by the side for succeeding letters.

If you wish to know the signification of *statuas*, you consider what case ends in *as*. In nouns it can only be the accusative plural; *as* being removed, for *a* the nominative singular you will have *statua*: you look for the letter S, and find STA at the top of the page, and down by the side for the following letters till you find *statua*, æ, f. 1, a statue, an image, &c.

If you wish to look out *regiōne*, you must remember the only cases that end in *e* are the vocative singular of the second declension, and the ablative singular of the third and fifth. It may come from *Regionus*, *Regio*, or *Regiones*. You look in the dictionary, and the first word you find is *Regio*, *ōnis*, a region, country, &c. the ablative singular of which is *regiōne*, the word required.

This, with the adjective given, makes perfect sense. Therefore, you may be sure you are right, especially as you can find no such word as *Regionus* or *Regiones*.

When the pupil looks out a word in his dictionary, he should take particular notice whether the genitive case increase long or short, or how the vowel is marked in the increasing syllable; thus, *regio*, *ōnis* is long, and *homo*, *īnis*, is short. This will save much subsequent trouble.

What is the use of the dictionary? What the grammar? Describe the method of looking out words.

What should be observed respecting the quantity of syllables.

## CHAP. II.—OF ADJECTIVES.

AN adjective denotes the quality of a noun, or shows of what sort or kind it is: as, I have a sweet apple. Here *sweet* is an adjective, because it shows the quality, sort, or kind of the apple. An adjective may also be known by its making sense with the word *thing*; as a sweet, bitter, white, black thing. Here *sweet*, *bitter*, *white*, and *black*, are adjectives, because they will make sense by being joined with the word *thing*.

### ADJECTIVES \* DECLINED AFTER THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

1	Magnus numērus. †	Secunda fortūna.	Nep.
2	Romānum imperium.		Eut.
3	Trecentas statuas.	Totâ regiōne.	Nep.
4	Summâ æquitâte.		Nep.
5	Nulla spes salūtis.		Nep.
6	Humāna memoria.	Nullâ die.	Eut.
7	Nocturno tempore.	Exiguam urbem.	Eut.
8	Mali facinōris.	Exigua manus.	Nep.
9	Felicem cursum.	Magna contentio.	Nep.
10	Suōrum civium.	Perpetua imperia.	Nep.
11	Loco idoneo.		Nep.

What is an adjective? What is a word called which denotes the quality or sort of a thing? Which is the adjective in these sentences? A good boy. A diligent scholar. How do you know that *good* and *diligent* are adjectives? What added to the radical word forms the *g. f. s. g. pl.* and *ab. pl.*?

For the parsing of a noun, see p. 13.

---

\* It is a very useful exercise for the pupil to decline an adjective and noun together: thus, Singular nom. *Magnus numerus* a great number, *g. Magni numeri* of a great number, &c. Singular nom. *Summa æquitas* the greatest equity, *g. Summæ æquitatis* of the greatest equity, &c.

† Though the signification of the adjective is put immediately after it,—in construing, the adjective and substantive must be taken together. You must not say *Magnus* a great *numerus* number, but always put the adjective and noun together, and say *Magnus numerus* a great number: *Secunda fortuna* a favourable fortune: *Romanum imperium* the Roman empire, &c.



## ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING TABLE FOR AN ADJECTIVE.

— is an adjective of the positive — comparative — superlative degree;—and of— terminations; declined like — of the— number — case — gender. It is declined thus: Singular nom.— g.— d.— ac.— v.— ab.—: Plural, nom.— g.— d.— ac.— v.— ab.—. Example. *Magnus* is an adjective of the positive *state* and of *three* terminations, declined like *Bonus*: of the *singular* number, *nominative* case, *masculine* gender. It is declined thus: Singular nom. *Magnus*, *Magna*, *Magnum*, g. *Magni*, *Magnæ*, *Magni*, &c. Plural. nom. *Magni*, *Magnæ*, *Magna*, g. *Magnorum*, *Magnarum*, *Magnorum*, &c.

The pupil should be taught to go quickly through this table, as soon as an adjective is given him to parse.

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF ADJECTIVES.

1 *Magnus a great* numerus:—*Magnus*, nom. s. m. *magnus*, a, um, adj.:—*Numerus*, i, m. 2, nom. s.—*Secunda a favourable* fortuna:—*Secunda*, nom. s. f. *secundus*, a, um, adj.:—*Fortuna*, æ, f. 1, nom. s.

2 *Romanum the Roman* imperium:—*Romanum*, nom. s. n. *Romanus*, a, um, adj.:—*Imperium*, i, n. 2, nom. s.

3 *Trecentas three hundred* statuas:—*Trecentas*, ac. pl. f. *trecenti*, æ, a, adj.:—*Statuas*, ac. pl. *statua*, æ, f. 1.—*Totâ with the whole* regione:—*Totâ*, ab. s. f. *totus*, a, um, g. *totius*, d. *toti*, adj.:—*Regione*, ab. s. *regio*, ōnis, f. 3.

4 *Summâ with the greatest* æquitate:—*Summâ*, ab. s. f. *summus*, a, um, adj.:—*Æquitate*, ab. s. *æquitas*, âtis, f. 3.

5 *Nulla no spes* salutis:—*Nulla*, nom. s. f. *nullus*, a, um, g. *ius*, adj.:—*Spes*, ei, f. 5, nom. s.:—*Salutis*, g. s. *salus*, ūtis, f. 3.

6 *Humana the human* memoria:—*Humana*, nom. s. f. *humanus*, a, um, adj.:—*Memoria*, æ, f. 1, nom. s.—*Nullâ in no* die:—*Nullâ*, ab. s. f. *nullus*, a, um, g. *ius*, adj.:—*Die*, ab. s. *dies*, ei, f. 5.

7 *Nocturno by night* tempore:—*Nocturno*, ab. s. n. *nocturnus*, a, um, adj.:—*Tempore*, ab. s. *tempus*, ōris, n. 3.—*Exiguam a little* urbem:—*Exiguam*, ac. s. f. *exiguus*, a, um, adj.:—*Urbem*, ac. s. *urbs*, is, f. 3.

8 *Mali of a bad* facinoris:—*Mali*, g. s. n. *malus*, a, um, adj.:—*Facinoris*, g. s. *facinus*, ōris, n. 3.—*Exigua a small* manus:—*Exigua*, nom. s. f. *exiguus*, a, um, adj.:—*Manus*, ūs, f. 4, nom. s.

9 *Felicem a happy* cursum:—*Felicem*, ac. s. m. *felix*, icis, adj.:—*Cursum*, ac. s. *cursus*, ūs, m. 4.—*Magna a great* contentio:—*Magna*, nom. s. f. *magnus*, a, um, adj.:—*Contentio*, ōnis, f. 3, nom. s.

10 *Suorum of his own* civium:—*Suorum*, g. pl. m. *suus*, a, um, adj.:—*Civium*, g. pl. *civis*, is, c. 3.—*Perpetua perpetual* imperia:—*Perpetua*, nom. pl. n. *perpetuus*, a, um, adj.:—*Imperia*, nom. pl. *imperium*, i, n. 2.

11 *Idoneo in a proper* loco:—*Idoneo*, ab. s. m. *idoneus*, a, um, adj.:—*Loco*, ab. s. *locus*, i, m. 2, pl. *loci*, m. and *loca*, n.

---

\* In future, the pupil will look out in his dictionary the signification of the nouns.



ADJECTIVES DECLINED AFTER THE THIRD  
DECLENSION, &c.

1	Omnis homo. Omnis fœmīna	
2	Omne cælum. Omnes cives	<i>Nep.</i>
3	Ingens bos. Spes duplex	
4	Brevi tempore	
5	Morsibus sævis canum	<i>Phæd.</i>
6	Quale præmium	<i>Nep.</i>
7	Pari felicitate	<i>Nep.</i>
8	Ingenti turbâ	<i>Eut.</i>
9	Terrestres exercitus	<i>Nep.</i>
10	Nullius feliceis arboris	
11	Tristia vulnera	
12	Omnes tres status	
13	Duobus signis	<i>Nep.</i>
14	Filius vestalis virginis	<i>Eut.</i>
15	Brevis fabula Æsopi.	<i>Phæd.</i>
16	Prudenti consilio. Celëri auxilio.	<i>Phæd.</i>

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1	Agrum quatuor jugerum	<i>Eut.</i>
2	Duæ partes	
3	Duo signa	
4	Ambæ manus	
5	Tria verba	
6	Singulæ horæ	
7	Bini fratres.	

How do you know that — is an adjective? What do you annex to the radical word to form the ablative plural, genitive plural, &c.?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF ADJECTIVES, &c.

1 Omnis *every* homo:—Omnis, *nom. s. m. omnis, is, adj.*:—Homo, *inis, c. 3, nom. s.*

Omnis *every* fœmina:—Omnis, *nom. s. f. adj.*:—Fœmina, *æ, f. 1, nom. s.*

2 Omne *all* cælum:—Omne, *nom. s. n. omnis, is, adj.*:—Cælum, *i, n. 2, nom. s.*

Omnes *all* cives:—Omnes, *nom. pl. c.*:—Cives, *nom. pl. civis, is, c. 3.*

3 Ingens *a great* bos:—Ingens, *nom. s. c. ingens, tis, adj.*:—Bos, *vis, c. 3, nom. s.*

Duplex a double spes :—Duplex, *nom. s. f. duplex*, *īcis*, *adj.* :—Spes, *ei*, *f. 5*, *nom. s.*

4 Brevi in a short tempore :—Brevi, *ab. s. n. brevis*, *is*, *adj.* :—Tempore, *ab. s. tempus*, *ōris*, *n. 3.*

5 Sævis with savage morsibus canum :—Sævis, *ab. pl. m. sævus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.* :—Morsibus, *ab. pl. morsus*, *ūs*, *m. 4.* :—Canum, *g. pl. canis*, *is*, *c. 3.* For the formation of the *g. pl.* see page 19.

6 Quale what præmium :—Quale, *nom. s. n. qualis*, *is*, *adj.* :—Præmium, *i*, *n. 2*, *nom. s.*

7 Pari with like felicitate :—Pari, *ab. s. f. par*, *ris*, *adj.* :—Felicitate, *ab. s. felicitas*, *ātis*, *f. 3.*

8 Ingenti with a great turbâ :—Ingenti, *ab. s. f. ingens*, *tis*, *adj.* :—Turbâ, *ab. s. turba*, *æ*, *f. 1.*

9 Terrestres the land exercitus :—Terrestres, *nom. pl. m. terrestris*, *is*, *adj.* :—Exercitus, *nom. pl. exercitus*, *ūs*, *m. 4.*

10 Nullius of no felicis fruitful arboris :—Nullius, *g. s. f. nullus*, *a*, *um*, *g. ius*, *adj.* :—Felicis, *g. s. f. felix*, *īcis*, *adj.* :—Arboris, *g. s. arbor*, *ōris*, *f. 3.*

11 Tristia severe vulnera :—Tristia, *nom. pl. n. tristis*, *is*, *adj.* :—Vulnera, *nom. pl. vulnus*, *ēris*, *n. 3.*

12 Omnes all tres three status :—Omnes, *nom. pl. m. adj.* :—Tres, *nom. pl. m. tres*, *ium*, *adj.* :—Status, *nom. pl. status*, *ūs*, *m. 4.*

13 Duobus with two signis :—Duobus, *ab. pl. n. duo*, *æ*, *o*, *adj.* :—Signis, *ab. pl. signum*, *i*, *n. 2.*

14 Filius vestalis of the vestal virginis :—Filius, *i*, *m. 2*, *nom. s.* :—Vestalis, *g. s. f. vestalis*, *is*, *adj.* :—Virginis, *g. s. virgo*, *īnis*, *f. 3.*

15 Brevis a short fabula Æsopi :—Brevis, *nom. s. f. brevis*, *is*, *adj.* :—Fabula, *æ*, *f. 1*, *nom. s.* :—Æsopi, *g. s. Æsopus*, *i*, *m. 2.*

16 Prudenti to a prudent consilio :—Prudenti, *d. s. n. prudens*, *tis*, *adj.* :—Consilio, *d. s. consilium*, *i*, *n. 2.*

Celeri with quick auxilio :—Celeri, *ab. s. n. celer*, *is*, *adj.* :—Auxilio, *ab. s. auxilium*, *i*, *n. 2.*

#### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1 Agrum quatuor of four jugerum :—Agrum, *ac. s. ager*, *ri*, *m. 2* :—Quatuor, *adj. indeclinable* :—Jugerum, *g. pl. jugera*, *um*, *n. 3*, only in the plural, from juger, *ēris*.

2 Duæ two partes :—Duæ, *nom. pl. f. duo*, *æ*, *o*, *adj.* :—Partes, *nom. pl. pars*, *tis*, *f. 3.*

3 Duo two signa :—Duo, *nom. pl. n. duo*, *æ*, *o*, *adj.* :—Signa, *nom. pl. signum*, *i*, *n. 2.*

4 Ambæ both manus :—Ambæ, *nom. pl. f. ambo*, *æ*, *o*, *adj.* :—Manus, *nom. pl. manus*, *ūs*, *f. 4.*

5 Tria three verba :—Tria, *nom. pl. n. tres*, *ium*, *adj.* :—Verba, *nom. pl. verbum*, *i*, *n. 2.*

6 Singulæ every horæ :—Singulæ, *nom. pl. f. singulus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.* :—Horæ, *nom. pl. hora*, *æ*, *f. 1.*

7 Bini twin fratres :—Bini, *nom. pl. m. bini*, *æ*, *a*, *adj.* :—Fratres, *nom. pl. frater*, *ris*, *m. 3.*

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

All comparatives are declined after the third declension like *Melior*, and superlatives after the first and second declensions like *Bonus*.

1	Victoria gratior	<i>Eut.</i>
2	Tristissimum vulnus	
3	Turpissimâ fraude	
4	Durissimis conditionibus	<i>Eut.</i>
5	Leo vastiōris corpōris	<i>Phæd.</i>
6	Nobilissimī Collatīni uxōrem	<i>Eut.</i>
7	Potentiōris homīnis	<i>Phæd.</i>
8	Tristiōris vulnēris	
9	Tenuissimâ valetudinē.	<i>Cæs.</i>

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1	Maxīmo dolōre	<i>Phæd.</i>
2	Tarquinius junior	<i>Eut.</i>
3	Majus imperium	<i>Nep.</i>
4	Optimōrum magistrōrum	
5	Hispaniam citeriōrem	<i>Cæs.</i>
6	Pejōre statu	
7	Positio humillīma	
8	Magis dubia res	
9	Maximè dubium exemplum.	

How is the comparative degree formed? Give an example.

How is the superlative degree formed? How are comparative adjectives declined?

How superlatives?

How do you know when an adjective is irregular?

What adjectives are compared by *Magis* and *Maxime*?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES, &c.

1 *Gratior a more pleasant victoria*:—*Gratior*, *nom. s. f. gratior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *gratus*:—*Victoria*, *æ*, *f. 1*, *nom. f.*

2 *Tristissimum a most severe vulnus*:—*Tristissimum*, *nom. s. n. tristissimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *tristis*:—*Vulnus*, *ēris*, *n. 3*, *nom. s.*

3 *Turpissimâ with the most shameful fraude*:—*Turpissimâ*, *ab. s. f. turpissimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *turpis*:—*Fraude*, *ab. s. fraus*, *dis*, *f. 3*.

4 *Durissimis on the hardest conditionibus*:—*Durissimis*, *ab. pl. f. durissimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *durus*:—*Conditionibus*, *ab. pl. conditio*, *ōnis*, *f. 3*.

5 *Leo vastioris of a greater corporis*:—*Leo*, *ōnis*, *m. 3*, *nom. s.*:—*Vastioris*, *g. s. n. vastior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *vastus*:—*Corporis*, *g. s. corpus*, *ōris*, *n. 3*.

6 *Uxorem nobilissimi of the most noble Collatini*:—*Uxorem*, *ac. s. uxor*, *ōris*, *f. 3*:—*Nobilissimi*, *g. s. m. nobilissimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *nobilis*:—*Collatini*, *g. s. Collatinus*, *i*, *m. 2*.

7 *Potentioris of a more powerful hominis*:—*Potentioris*, *g. s. m. potentior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *potens*:—*Hominis*, *g. s. homo*, *īnis*, *c. 3*.

8 *Tristioris of a more severe vulneris*:—*Tristioris*, *g. s. n. tristior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *tristis*:—*Vulneris*, *g. s. vulnus*, *ēris*, *n. 3*.

9 *Tenuissimâ in the weakest, or in a very delicate valetudine*:—*Tenuissimâ*, *ab. s. f. tenuissimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *tenuis*:—*Valetudine*, *ab. s. valetudo*, *īnis*, *f. 3*.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1 *Maximo with the greatest dolore*:—*Maximo*, *ab. s. m. maximus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *magnus*:—*Dolore*, *ab. s. dolor*, *ōris*, *m. 3*.

2 *Tarquinius junior the younger*:—*Tarquinius*, *i*, *m. 2*, *nom. s.*:—*Junior*, *nom. s. m. junior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *juvenis*.

3 *Majus a greater imperium*:—*Majus*, *nom. s. n. major*, *us*, *g. ōris*, *comp.* from *magnus*:—*Imperium*, *i*, *n. 2*, *nom. s.*

4 *Optimorum of the best magistrorum*:—*Optimorum*, *g. pl. m. optimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *bonus*:—*Magistrorum*, *g. pl. magister*, *ri*, *m. 2*.

5 *Hispaniam citeriorem the nearer*:—*Hispaniam*, *ac. s. Hispania*, *æ*, *f. 1*:—*Citeriorem*, *ac. s. f. citerior*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *citer*, *ra*, *rum*.

6 *Pejore in a worse statu*:—*Pejore*, *ab. s. m. pejor*, *ōris*, *comp.* from *malus*:—*Statu*, *ab. s. status*, *ūs*, *m. 4*.

7 *Humillima the lowest positio*:—*Humillima*, *nom. s. f. humillimus*, *a*, *um*, *sup.* from *humilis*:—*Positio*, *ōnis*, *f. 3*, *nom. s.*

8 *Magis dubia a more doubtful res*:—*Magis*, *adverb.*:—*Dubia*, *nom. s. f. dubius*, *a*, *um*, *comp.*:—*Res*, *ei*, *f. 5*, *nom. s.*

9 *Maximè dubium the most doubtful exemplum*:—*Maximè*, *adverb.*:—*Dubium*, *nom. s. n. dubius*, *a*, *um*, *sup.*:—*Exemplum*, *i*, *n. 2*, *nom. s.*



## CHAP. III.—OF PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN (*pro* for, *nomen* a name or noun) is a word used instead of a noun: as, John is a good Boy, he always gets his Lesson, and minds what is said to him. Here *he*, *his*, and *him*, are pronouns, being put instead of the noun John.

- |    |                           |                 |               |
|----|---------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1  | Hic homo.*                | Hæc fœmīna      |               |
| 2  | Hoc regnum.               | Hic dies        |               |
| 3  | Exortus hujus diēi.       | Vir qui.        | Fœmīna quæ    |
| 4  | Hoc tumulto.              | Eas regiōnes.   | Negotium quod |
| 5  | Huic Miltiādi.            | Quo casu.       | Negotia quæ   |
| 6  | Cujus victoriæ.           | Ego qui.        | Nōs qui       |
| 7  | Ipsūm hoc membrum.        | Tu qui          |               |
| 8  | Hoc responso oracūli.     | Vir quem        | Nep.          |
| 9  | Virginii cujusdam.        | Viri quos       |               |
| 10 | Incōlas ejus insulæ.      | Mulier quam     |               |
| 11 | Voluntāte eōrum.          | Muliēres quas   |               |
| 12 | Nostrātes philosophi.     | Nostratia verba | Cic.          |
| 13 | Ipsārum urbium.           | Muliēres quarum |               |
| 14 | Cujus ratio.              | Locum quendam   | Nep.          |
| 15 | Adventu horum.            | Anīme mi        | Ter.          |
| 16 | Ipse ego, or Ipse egōmet. | Tute ipse.      | Ter.          |

What are pronouns? Which is the pronoun in this sentence, I read? What is *I* used instead of? How do you know *I* is a pronoun? What is the genitive plural of *Hic*, of *Is*, and of *Idem*, &c. &c.?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF PRONOUNS, &amp;c.

- 1 Hic † *this* homo :—Hic, *pron. nom. s. m. hic*, &c. :—Homo, *nn.*  
 Hæc *this* fœmina :—Hæc, *pron. nom. s. f. hic*, &c. :—Fœmina, *nn.*  
 2 Hoc *this* regnum :—Hoc, *pron. nom. s. n. hic* :—Regnum, *nn.*  
 Hic *this* dies :—Hic, *pron. nom. s. m. hic* :—Dies, *nn.*

\* Pronouns may be parsed by the table for adjectives, omitting the degrees of comparison. They may also be declined with the noun, as singular *nom. hic homo* this man, *g. hujus hominis* of this man, &c. Singular *nom. Ipsūm hoc membrum* this very member, *g. ipsius hujus membri* of this very member, *d. ipsi huic membro* to this very member, &c.

† The pronoun is separated from the noun, that the youngest pupil may know to which word the English belongs: but in construing, it must always, like the adjective, be united with it, as *hic homo* this man; not *hic* this, *homo* man, &c.



3 Exortus hujus of this diei :—Exortus, nn. :—Hujus, pron. g. s. m. hic :—Diei, nn. dies.—Vir qui who :—Vir, nn. :—Qui, pron. nom. s. m. :—Fœmina quæ who :—Fœmina, nn. :—Quæ, pron. nom. s. f. qui.

4 Hoc by this tumulto :—Hoc, pron. ab. s. m. hic :—Tumulto, nn. tumultus.—Eas those regiones :—Eas, pron. ac. pl. f. is :—Regiones, nn. regio.—Negotium quod which :—Negotium, nn. :—Quod, pron. nom. s. n. qui.

5 Huic to this Miltiadi :—Huic, pron. d. s. m. hic :—Miltiadi, nn. Miltiades.—Quo by what casu :—Quo, pron. ab. s. m. qui :—Casu, nn. casus.—Negotia quæ which :—Negotia, nn. negotium :—Quæ, pron. nom. pl. n. qui.

6 Cujus of which victoriæ :—Cujus, pron. g. s. f. qui :—Victoriæ, nn. victoria.—Ego I qui who :—Ego, pron. nom. s. :—qui, pron. nom. s. —Nos we qui who :—Nos, pron. nom. pl. ego :—Qui, pron. nom. pl.

7 Ipsum hoc this very membrum :—Ipsum, pron. ac. s. n. ipse :—Hoc, pron. ac. s. n. hic :—Membrum, nn.—Tu thou qui who :—Tu, pron. nom. s. :—Qui, pron. nom. s.

8 Hoc by this responso oraculi :—Hoc, pron. ab. s. n. hic :—Responso, nn. responsum :—Oraculi, nn. oraculum.—Vir quem whom :—Vir, nn. :—Quem, pron. ac. s. m. qui.

9 Cujusdam of a certain Virginii :—Cujusdam, pron. g. s. m. quidam :—Virginii, nn. Virginiius.—Viri quos whom :—Viri, nn. vir :—Quos, pron. ac. pl. m. qui.

10 Incolas ejus of that insulæ :—Incolas, nn. incola :—Ejus, pron. g. s. f. is :—Insulæ, nn. insula.—Mulier quam whom :—Mulier, nn. :—Quam, pron. ac. s. f. qui.

11 Voluntate eorum of them :—Voluntate, nn. voluntas :—Eorum, pron. g. pl. m. is.—Mulieres quas whom :—Mulieres, nn. mulier :—Quas, pron. ac. pl. f. qui.

12 Nostrates our own country philosophi :—Nostrates, nom. pl. m. nostras, âtis, adj. pron. :—Philosophi, nn. philosophus.—Nostratia, our own country verba :—Nostratia, nom. pl. n. nostras, âtis, adj. pron. :—Verba, nn. verbum.

13 Ipsarum of those urbium :—Ipsarum, pron. g. pl. f. ipse :—Urbium, nn. urbs.—Mulieres quarum whose or of whom :—Mulieres, nn. mulier :—Quarum, pron. g. pl. f. qui.

14 Cujus of which ratio :—Cujus, pron. g. s. f. qui :—Ratio, nn.—Quendam some or some certain locum :—Quendam, pron. ac. s. m. quidam, &c. :—Locum, nn. locus.

15 Adventu horum of them :—Adventu, nn. adventus :—Horum, pron. g. pl. m. hic.—Mi anime O my life, soul, O my dear :—Mi, pron. v. s. meus, a, um :—Anime, nn. animus.

16 Ipse ego or ipse egomet I myself :—Ipse, pron. nom. s. m. ipse, a, um :—Ego, pron. nom. s. m. ego-met. Egomet is the same, only met is added; as g. meimet; d. mihimet, &c. : so, tumet or tutemet, tuimet, suimet.—Tute ipse thou thyself :—Tute, pron. nom. s. te is only used in the nom. singular :—Ipse, as above.

## CHAP. IV.—OF VERBS.

---

A VERB is the chief word in every sentence, and is derived from *verbum* a word: it signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. In this sentence, "John walks," *walks* is a verb, because it signifies to do something, or denotes an action; and *to write*, *to read*, and *to run*, are verbs because they signify to do something.

Verbs are of three kinds, Active, Passive, and Neuter.

1. A verb active (*activum*) is that which declares such an action of its nominative case as will affect some object, as, I love him, I guide them.

2. A verb passive (*passivum*) expresses a passion or suffering of its nominative before it, as, *amor*, I am loved, *dirigor*, I am guided.

3. A verb neuter (*neutrum*) generally expresses neither action nor passion of its nominative case, but a state, or posture; but if it denote action, it is without any object, as, *dormio* I sleep, *curro* I run, *ambulo* I walk.

An active may be distinguished from a neuter verb thus: If the accusative case of a pronoun can be placed next after the verb, it is *active*; if not, it is *neuter*.

What is a verb? Give me an example. How do you know it is a verb? What do you call words which denote action? Which is the verb in these sentences? John speaks. I talk to John. The master loves a good boy. He is well. I am attentive. If I be better. John was attentive. I am loved, &c. How can you tell a neuter from an active verb? What sort of a verb is *to sit*, &c.?

How do you know the conjugation of a verb? (*See the Grammar.*) In the first conjugation, is the vowel *A* long or short before *re* of the infinitive mood? What are the vowels that come before *re* of the infinitive mood in the 2d, 3d, and 4th conjugation? Are they long or short?

There are three principal parts of a verb, from which all other inflections are formed, namely, 1st, the PRESENT, 2dly, the PRETERPERFECT, and, 3dly, the SUPINE, according to the following

TABLE.

IND.				IMP.	SUBJ.		INF.		
Preterim.					Preterim.		Gerunds.		
Fut.				Pr.	Pr.	Preterim.	Pr.	Part.	
I. PRESENT.									
Am	-o	-ābam	-ābo	-a, āto	-em	-ārem	-āre	-andi, o, um	-ans
Mon	-eo	-ēbam	-ēbo	-e, ēto	-eam	-ērem	-ēre	-endi, o, um	-ens
Reg	-o	-ēbam	-am	-e, ūto	-am	-ērem	-ēre	-endi, o, um	-ens
Aud	-io	-iēbam	-iam	-i, īto	-iam	-īrem	-īre	-iendi, o, um	-iens
IND.				SUBJ.				INF.	
Preter.				Preter.				Fut.	
Preterpl.				Preterpl.				Preter. & Preterpl.	
II. PRETERPERF.									
Amāv	-i	-eram		-ērim	-issem	-ēro	-isse		
Monu	-i								
Rex	-i								
Andīv	-i								
IND.				SUBJ.				INF.	
Supine Act.				Supine Pass.				Part. Pass.	
Fut.				Fut. in -rus.				Fut.	
III. SUPINE.									
Amāt	-um	-u		-us	-ūrus	-ūrum esse			
Monīt	-um								
Rect	-um								
Audit	-um								

By the preceding Table the first person singular, in all the tenses of any regular verb, is easily found. See Eton Grammar, page 28; Valpy's, page 38; and Ruddiman's, page 50.

How many principal parts are there in every verb? What are they?

The same observation that was made respecting the noun will refer to the radical part of the verb and its termination, *viz.* The signs of tenses, expressed in English chiefly by words placed before the verb, are denoted in Latin by a termination annexed to the radical Latin word.

Thus *ābam*, *ābas*, *ābat*, *abāmus*, *abātis*, *ābant*, annexed to the radical Latin word *am*, is the same as *I did*, *thou didst*, *he did*, &c. placed before the English word *love*: thus

The Latin becomes

Am *ābam*  
 — *ābas*  
 — *ābat*  
 — *abāmus*  
 — *abātis*  
 — *ābant*

The English of which is

*I did love*  
*Thou didst* —  
*He did* —  
*We did* —  
*Ye did* —  
*They did* —

The same termination *abam*, *abas*, annexed to the radical part of every other verb of the first conjugation, will form the same tense. Thus when the terminations *ābam*, &c. are annexed to the Latin radical words *salt dance*, *cogit think*, &c. they become *salt-ābam* *I did dance*, *cogit-ābam* *I did think*, *cogit-ābas* *thou didst think*, &c. If we want the preterimperfect tense potential mood, we put *ārem* to the end of the radical word *am love*, or *salt dance*, *am-ārem* *I would love*, or *salt-ārem* *I would dance*.

All the other tenses are formed by annexing to the radical word the terminations in the preceding Table. This Table of terminations is recommended to the particular notice of the pupil; for, by it, when the *present*, *preterperfect*, and *supine* of any verb are known, which are formed as directed in CHAP. X. page 76, every inflection in all the four conjugations is easily found. The pupil has only to be well acquainted with this Table, and most of the difficulty with the verbs will be overcome.

What is the Latin termination which answers to *I did*, &c. placed before the English verb? What tense does *ārem* form when annexed to the radical part of any verb?

Do all verbs of the same conjugation annex the same termination to form the same tense? How are other tenses formed? Where are these terminations to be found? What is worthy of particular notice? Why? Have not all verbs of the same conjugation similar terminations?



## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>act.</i> .....	stands for a verb active.
<i>neut.</i> .....	neuter.
<i>pass.</i> .....	passive.
<i>irr.</i> .....	irregular.
<i>def.</i> .....	defective.
<i>impers.</i> .....	impersonal.
<i>dep.</i> .....	deponent.
<i>ind.</i> .....	a verb in the indicative mood.
<i>imp.</i> .....	imperative mood.
<i>pot.</i> .....	potential mood.
<i>subj.</i> .....	subjunctive mood.
<i>inf.</i> .....	infinitive mood.
<i>pr.</i> .....	present tense.
<i>preterim.</i> .....	preterimperfect tense.
<i>preter.</i> .....	preterperfect tense.
<i>preterpl.</i> .....	preterpluperfect tense.
<i>fut.</i> .....	future tense.

1, 2, and 3, with an *s* annexed to them, stand for the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons singular, and with *pl.* the same persons plural.

<i>part.</i> .....	stands for participle.
<i>adv.</i> .....	adverb.
<i>conj.</i> .....	conjunction.
<i>prep.</i> .....	preposition.



THE NEUTER VERB *SUM* AND ITS PARTS.

1	Tu es felix	
2	Nos sumus felices	
3	Rusticus es	<i>Virg.</i>
4	Est mihi	<i>Ter.</i>
5	Opus est mihi	
6	Hi erunt	<i>Nep.</i>
7	Esto brevis	<i>Hor.</i>
8	Quis sit	<i>Nep.</i>
9	Essēmus boni	
10	Se hostem esse	<i>Nep.</i>
11	Vita erat	<i>Ter.</i>
12	Nihil est moræ	<i>Ter.</i>
13	Proximus sum egomet mihi	<i>Ter.</i>
14	Id erat nomen.	<i>Ter.</i>

*The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

15	Fuit potestas	<i>Ter.</i>
16	Fuit otiosus	
17	Fuit illi	
18	Miltiades fuit	<i>Nep.</i>
19	Hæc fuisse	
20	Magnus fuisset labor	
21	Exitium imperio futurum.	<i>Virg.</i>

What are the principal parts in the verb *sum*?

What tenses are formed from the preterperfect?

## ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING TABLE FOR A VERB.

— is a verb — of the — conjugation, because — is — before *re* of the infinitive mood. In the — mood, — tense, — number, — person. From —: the principal parts are —.

Example first: *Es* is a verb *neuter*. In the *indicative* mood *present* tense *singular* number *second* person from *Sum*. The principal parts are *Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus*, to be.

Example second: *Saltabas* is a verb *active* of the *first* conjugation, because *a* is *long* before *re* in the infinitive mood. In the *indicative* mood *preterimperfect* tense *singular* number *second* person from *Salto*. The principal parts are *Salt-o, as, āvi, āre, ātum*, to dance.

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF THE VERB SUM, &amp;c.

- 1 Tu es *thou art* felix\* :—Tu, *pron. nom. s.* tu, tui :—Es, *ind. pr. 2 s. sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, neut. to be* :—Felix, *adj.*
- 2 Nos sumus *we are* felices :—Nos, *pron. nom. pl.* ego, mei :—Sumus, *ind. pr. 1 pl. sum, &c.* :—Felices, *adj. felix, cis.*
- 3 Es *thou art* rusticus :—Es, *ind. pr. 2 s. sum, &c.* :—Rusticus, *nn.*
- 4 Est *there is* mihi, *to me, or I have* :—Est, *ind. pr. 3 s. sum, &c.* :—Mihi, *pron. d. s. ego, mei.*
- 5 Opus *need* est is mihi :—Opus, *nn. indeclinable* :—Est, *ind. pr. 3 s. sum, &c.* ;—Mihi, *pron. d. s. ego, mei.*
- 6 Hi *these* erunt *will be* :—Hi, *pron. nom. pl.* hic, hæc, hoc :—Erunt, *ind. fut. 3 pl. sum, &c.*
- 7 Esto *be* thou brevis :—Esto, *imp. 2 s. sum, &c.* :—Brevis, *adj.*
- 8 Quis *who* sit *may be* :—Quis, *pron. nom. s.* quis, quæ, quid *or quod* :—Sit, *pot. pr. 3 s. sum, &c.*
- 9 Essemus *we might be* boni :—Essemus, *pot. preterim. 1 pl. sum, &c.* :—Boni, *adj.*
- 10 Se *that he* esse *was* hostem :—Se, *pron. ac. s.* sui, &c. :—Esse, *inf. pr. or preterim. sum, &c.* :—Hostem, *nn. hostis.*
- 11 Vita erat *was* :—Vita, *nn.* :—Erat, *ind. preterim. 3 s. sum, &c.*
- 12 Est *(there) is* nihil moræ :—Est, *ind. pr. 3 s. sum, &c.* ;—Nihil, *nn. indeclinable* :—Moræ, *nn. mora.*
- 13 Egomet sum *am* proximus mihi :—Egomet, *pron. nom. s. ego-met, g. meimet* :—Sum, *ind. pr. 1 s. &c.* :—Proximus, *adj.*
- 14 Id erat *was* nomen :—Id, *pron. nom. s. n. is, ea, id* :—Erat, *ind. preterim. 3 s. sum, &c.* :—Nomen, *nn.*
- 15 Potestas fuit *was* :—Potestas, *nn.* :—Fuit, *ind. preter. 3 s. sum, &c.*
- 16 Fuit *he hath been* otiosus :—Fuit, *ind. preter. 3 s. sum, &c.* :—Otiosus, *adj.*
- 17 Fuit *there hath been* illi :—Fuit, *ind. preter. 3 s. sum, &c.* :—Illi, *pron. d. s. ille, a, ud.*
- 18 Miltiades Miltiades, *an Athenian general* fuit *was* :—Miltiades, *nn.* :—Fuit, *ind. preter. 3 s. sum, es, &c.*
- 19 Hæc *that these things* fuisse *had been* :—Hæc, *pron. ac. pl.* hic, hæc, hoc :—Fuisse, *inf. preter. sum, &c.*
- 20 Labor fuisset *would have been* magnus :—Labor, *nn.* :—Fuisset, *pot. preterpl. 3 s. sum, &c.* :—Magnus, *adj.*
- 21 Exitium *that a—futurum (esse) would be* imperio :—Exitium, *nn.* :—Futurum, *inf. fut. sum, &c.* :—Imperio, *nn. imperium.*

---

\* The directions which were given at page 27, for finding nouns in the Dictionary, will also serve for adjectives.

## VERBS IN THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*The Present Tense and the Tenses formed from it.*

- |   |                     |      |
|---|---------------------|------|
| 1 | Sal̄tābas           |      |
| 2 | Illa coḡitat       |      |
| 3 | Min̄ōris æstimābunt | Nep. |
| 4 | Ambulandi           |      |
| 5 | Cives judicārent    | Nep. |
| 6 | Creābat             |      |
| 7 | Cantans             |      |
| 8 | Negēmus             |      |
| 9 | Nemo putābat.       | Nep. |

*The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |    |                          |      |
|----|--------------------------|------|
| 10 | Romam vocāvit            | Eut. |
| 11 | Aptavērit                |      |
| 12 | Nil ego peccāvi          | Op.  |
| 13 | Aravisse                 |      |
| 14 | Balavērunt * loves       |      |
| 15 | Pamphīlus firmāvit fidem | Ter. |
| 16 | Canes latravissent *.    |      |

*The Supine, &c.*

- |    |            |
|----|------------|
| 17 | Clamātum   |
| 18 | Erratūrus. |

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

- |   |                 |      |
|---|-----------------|------|
| 1 | Urbes stetērant | Nep. |
| 2 | Nos laverīmus   | Ter. |
| 3 | Juvāre patriam  | Nep. |
| 4 | Secuisse        |      |
| 5 | Dedistis librum |      |
| 6 | Tonuit.         |      |

What tenses are formed from the present? The preterperfect?

What part of the verb is formed from the supine?

What would *balavērunt* be if contracted?

What verbs are most frequently contracted?

\* In certain persons of the preterperfect tense and its derivatives the verb is sometimes contracted by omitting the *v*, or the *v* and the following vowel. This contraction generally takes place in verbs of the first conjugation: in verbs of the second and third having *evi*: and of the third and fourth having *ivi* in the preterperfect tense.

*Balaverunt* and *latravissent* contracted, would be *balārun*t and *latrāssent*.

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE FIRST  
CONJUGATION.

1 Saltabas *thou didst dance*:—Saltabas, *ind. preterim*. 2 s. salto, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to dance*.

2 Illa *she cogitat thinketh*:—Illa, *pron. nom. s. f. ille, a, ud*:—Cogitat, *ind. pr. 3 s. cogito*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to think*.

3 Æstimabunt *they shall or will esteem (it) minoris of less value*:—Æstimabunt, *ind. fut. 3 pl. æstimo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to esteem*:—Minoris, *adj. comp. from parvus*.

4 Ambulandi *of walking*:—Ambulandi, *gerund in di, ambulo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to walk*.

5 Cives judicarent *should judge*:—Cives, *nn. civis*:—Judicarent, *pot. preterim*, 3 pl. judico, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to judge*.

6 Creabat *he did create*:—Creabat, *ind. preterim*, 3 s. creo, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to create*.

7 Cantans *singing*:—Cantans, *part. pr. canto*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to sing*.

8 Negenus *let us deny*:—Negemus, *imp. 1 pl. nego*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to deny*.

9 Nemo putabat *thought or did think*:—Nemo, *nn.*:—Putabat, *ind. preterim*. 3 s. puto, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to think*.

10 Vocavit *he called (it) Romam*:—Vocavit, *ind. preter. 3 s. voco*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to call*:—Romam, *nn. Roma*.

11 Aptaverit *he should have fitted*:—Aptaverit, *pot. preter. 3 s. apto*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to fit*.

12 Ego peccavi, *I have done wrong nil*:—Ego, *pron.*:—Peccavi, *ind. preter. 1 s. pecco*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *neut. 1, to sin*:—Nil, *nn.*

13 Aravisse *to have ploughed*:—Aravisse, *inf. preter. or preterpl. aro*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to plough*.

14 Oves balaverunt *have bleated*:—Oves, *nn.*:—Balaverunt, *ind. preter. 3 pl. halo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to bleat*.

15 Pamphilus firmavit *hath kept fidem (his) promise*:—Pamphilus, *nn.*:—Firmavit, *ind. preter. 3 s. firmo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to confirm*:—Fidem, *nn. fides*.

16 Canes latravissent *would have barked*:—Canes, *nn.*:—Latravissent, *pot. preterpl. 3 pl. latro*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to bark*.

17 Clamatum *to cry out*:—Clamatum, *supine, clamo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to cry out*.

18 Erraturus *about to err*:—Erraturus, *part. fut. in rus. erro*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to err*.

1 Urbes steterant *had stood*:—Urbes, *nn. urbs*:—Steterant, *ind. preterpl. 3 pl. sto*, as, ēti, āre, ātum, *neut. 1, to stand*.

2 Nos laverimus *shall have washed*:—Nos, *pron. ego*:—Laverimus, *pot. fut. 1 pl. lavo*, avas, avi, avāre, avātum, &c. *act. 1, to wash*.

3 Juvare *to help patriam*:—Juvare, *inf. pr. juvo*, vas, vi, vāre, tum, *act. 1, to help*:—Patriam, *nn. patria*.

4 Secuisse *to have cut*:—Secuisse, *inf. preter. or preterpl. seco*, as, ni, āre, tum, *act. 1, to cut*.

5 Dedistis *you have given librum*:—Dedistis, *ind. preter. 2 pl. do*, as, edi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to give*:—Librum, *nn. liber*.

6 Tonuit *it hath thundered*:—Tonuit, *ind. preter. 3 s. tono*, as, ui, āre, itum, *neut. 1, to thunder*.



## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION, &amp;c.

*The present Tense and the Tenses formed from it.*

- |   |                          |              |
|---|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Caleāmus                 |              |
| 2 | Carēbat nomīne.          | <i>Nep.</i>  |
| 3 | Corpōra languēbant morbo | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 4 | Quis pulsat fores?       |              |
| 5 | Studeant                 |              |
| 6 | Imperium habērem         |              |

*The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |    |                             |             |
|----|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 7  | Quis docuit?                | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 8  | Doluisse                    |             |
| 9  | Ingrāti anīmi crimen horrui | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 10 | Jacuissēmus                 |             |
| 11 | Oluisti                     |             |
| 12 | Tacuērit                    |             |
| 13 | Splenduisse                 |             |
| 14 | Janua patuērat              |             |

*The Supines, &c.*

- |    |                  |
|----|------------------|
| 15 | Tentum           |
| 16 | Debitūrum esse   |
| 17 | Placitūra puella |

## IRREGULAR VERBS, &amp;c.

- |   |                       |              |
|---|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1 | Anus nebat            | <i>Ter.</i>  |
| 2 | Hæsīmus               |              |
| 3 | Omnium anīmi ardēbant | <i>Cæs.</i>  |
| 4 | Mansisset             |              |
| 5 | Risise                |              |
| 6 | Fulsērunt ignes       | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 7 | Sedērim.              |              |

What tenses are formed from the present? Preterperfect?

What part of the verb is formed from the supine?

How do you know when a verb is irregular?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION, &amp;c.

1 Caleamus *we may be hot*:—Caleamus, *pot. pr. 1 pl. caleo, es, ui, ēre, neut. 2, to be hot.*

2 Carebat *he wanted nomine*:—Carebat, *ind. preterim. 3 s. careo, es, ui, ēre, itum, neut. 2, to want*:—Nomine, *nn. nomen.*



3 Corpora languēbant *languished* morbo :—Corpora, un. corpus :—Languēbant, *ind. preterim.* 3 pl. languēo, es, i, ēre, neut. 2, *to languish* :—Morbo, nn. morbus.

4 Quis pulsāt *knocks at* fores?—Quis, *pron.* :—Pulsāt, *ind. pr.* 3 s. pulso, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act.* 1, *to knock* :—Fores, nn.

5 Studeant *let them study* :—Studeant, *imp.* 3 pl. studeo, es, ui, ēre, neut. 2, *to study*.

6 Habere[m] *I might have* imperium :—Habere[m], *pot. preterim.* 1 s. habeo, es, ui, ēre, itum, *act.* 2 :—Imperium, nn.

7 Quis docuit *taught* :—Docuit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. doceo, es, ui, ēre, tum, *act.* 2, *to teach* :—Quis, *pron.*

8 Doluisse *to have grieved* :—Doluisse, *inf. preter. or preterpl.* doleo, es, ui, ēre, itum, neut. 2, *to grieve*.

9 Horruī *I have dreaded* crimen ingrati animi :—Horruī, *ind. preter.* 1 s. horreo, es, ui, ēre, neut. 2, *to dread* :—Crimen, nn. :—Ingrati, *adj.* ingratus :—Animi, nn. animus.

10 Jacuissemus *we would have lain* :—Jacuissemus, *pot. preterpl.* 1 pl. jaceo, es, ui, ēre, tum, neut. 2, *to lie*.

11 Oluisti *thou hast smelled* :—Oluisti, *ind. preter.* 2 s. oleo, es, ui, ēre, itum, neut. 2, *to smell*.

12 Tacuerit *he shall hold his peace, or be silent* :—Tacuerit, *pot. fut.* 3 s. taceo, es, ui, ēre, itum, neut. 2, *to be silent*.

13 Splenduisse *to have shone* :—Splenduisse, *inf. preter.* splendeo, es, ui, ēre, neut. 2, *to shine*.

14 Janua patnerat *had been open* :—Janua, nn. :—Patuerat, *ind. preterpl.* 3 s. pateo, es, ui, ēre, neut. 2, *to open*.

15 Tentum *to hold* :—Tentum, *supine*, teneo, es, ui, ēre, tum, *act.* 2, *to hold*.

16 Debiturum esse *to be about to owe* :—Debiturum esse, *inf. fut.* debeo, es, ui, ēre, itum, *act.* 2, *to owe*.

17 Placitura *a pleasing* puella :—Placitura, *part. fut. f. in rus.* placeo, es, ui, ēre, itum, neut. 2 :—Puella, nn.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Anus *an old woman* nebat *did spin* :—Anus, nn. :—Nebat, *ind. preterim.* neo, nes, nevi, nere, netum, neut. 2, *to spin*.

2 Hæsimus *we have stuck* :—Hæsimus, *ind. preter.* 1 pl. hæreo, res, si, rēre, sum, neut. 2, *to stick*.

3 Animi omnium ardebant *burned* :—Animi, nn. animus :—Omnium, *adj.* omnis :—Ardebant, *ind. preterim.* 3 pl. ardeo, des, si, dēre, sum, neut. 2, *to burn*.

4 Mansisset *he would have remained* :—Mansisset, *pot. preterpl.* 3 s. manco, es, si, ēre, sum, neut. 2, *to remain*.

5 Risisse *to have laughed* :—Risisse, *inf. preter.* rideo, des, si, dēre, sum, neut. 2, *to laugh*.

6 Ignes fulserunt *have shone* :—Ignes, nn. ignis :—Fulserunt, *ind. preter.* 3 pl. fulgeo, ges, si, gēre, sum, neut. 2, *to shine*.

7 Sederim *I should have sat* :—Sederim, *pot. preter.* 1 s. sedeo, des, di, dēre, ssum, neut. 2, *to sit*.

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, &amp;c.

*The Present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| 1 Jungis equos curru | Virg. |
| 2 Caput tegit galeâ  |       |
| 3 Minuendi iram      |       |
| 4 Bibo aquam         |       |
| 5 Bellum renovāre.   | Nep.  |

*The Preterperfect Tense, its Derivatives, &c.*

- |                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| 6 Salūti consuluērat           | Nep. |
| 7 Miltiādes dirīgat cursum     | Nep. |
| 8 Illi dixērant                |      |
| 9 Præmium tribuisse            |      |
| 10 Auctōrem fœdēris habuērant. | Nep. |

*The Supine and its Derivatives.*

- |                         |
|-------------------------|
| 11 Junctum dextram      |
| 12 Tractūrum esse       |
| 13 Parsimoniâ victūrus. |

## IRREGULAR VERBS, &amp;c.

- |                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| 1 Multi petērent societātem | Nep.  |
| 2 Navem is fregit           | Ter.  |
| 3 Homīnes legunt            | Nep.  |
| 4 Puer lusit                |       |
| 5 Clausēras portas          |       |
| 6 Ranæ cecinērunt querēlam. | Phæd. |

What tenses are formed from the present? preterperfect? What parts of the verb are formed from the supine?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE THIRD  
CONJUGATION, &c.

1 Jungis *thou joinest* equos curru :—Jungis, *ind. pr.* 2 s. jungo, gis, xi, gère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to join* :—Equos, nn. equus :—Curru, nn. currus.

2 Tegit *he covers* caput galeà :—Tegit, *ind. pr.* 3 s. tego, gis, xi, gère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to cover* :—Caput, nn. :—Galea, nn.

3 Minuendi *of lessening* iram :—Minuendi, *gerund in di*, minuo, uis, ui, nère, ùtum, *act.* 3, *to lessen* :—Iram, nn. ira.

4 Bibo *I drink* aquam :—Bibo, *ind. pr.* 1 s. bibo, bis, bi, bère, bītum, *act.* 3, *to drink* :—Aquam, nn. aqua.

5 Renovare *to renew* bellum :—Renovare, *inf. pr.* renovo, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act.* 1, *to renew* :—Bellum, nn.

6 Consuluerat *he had consulted* saluti :—Consuluerat, *ind. preterpl.* 3 s. consulo, is, ui, ère, tum, *neut.* 3, *to consult* :—Saluti, nn. salus.

7 Miltiades dirigat *may direct* cursum :—Miltiades, nn. :—Dirigat, *pot. pr.* 3 s. dirigo, ĩgis, exi, ĩgère, ectum, *act.* 3, *to direct* :—Cursum, nn. cursus.

8 Illi dixerant *had said* :—Illi, *pron.* ille :—Dixerant, *ind. preterpl.* 3 pl. dico, cis, xi, cère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to say*.

9 Tribuisse *to have given* præmium :—Tribuisse, *inf. preter.* tribuo, is, i, ère, tum, *act.* 3, *to give* :—Præmium, nn.

10 Habuerant *they had auctorem* fæderis :—Habuerant, *ind. preterpl.* 3 pl. habeo, es, ui, ère, ĩtum, *act.* 2, *to have* :—Auctorem, nn. auctor :—Fæderis, nn. fædus.

11 Junctum *to join* dextram :—Junctum, *supine act.* jungo, gis, xi, gère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to join* :—Dextram, nn. dextra.

12 Tracturum esse *to be about to draw* :—Tracturum esse, *inf. fut.* traho, his, xi, hère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to draw*.

13 Victurus *about to conquer* parsimoniâ :—Victurus, *inf. fut. in rus*, vinco, ncis, ci, ncère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to conquer* :—Parsimonia, nn.

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Multi peterent *might seek* societatem :—Multi, *adj.* multus :—Peterent, *pot. preterim.* 3 pl. peto, is, ĩvi, ère, ĩtum, *act.* 3, *to seek* :—Societatem, nn. societas.

2 Is fregit *hath broken* navem, or *he suffered shipwreck* :—Is, *pron.* :—Fregit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. frango, angis, egi, angère, actum, *act.* 3, *to break* :—Navem, nn. navis.

3 Legunt *they choose* homines :—Legunt, *ind. pr.* 3 pl. lego, gis, gi, gère, ctum, *act.* 3, *to choose* :—Homines, nn.

4 Puer lusit *hath played* :—Puer, nn. :—Lusit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. ludo, dis, si, dère, sum, *act.* 3, *to play*.

5 Clauseras *thou hadst shut* portas :—Clauseras, *ind. preterpl.* 2 s. claudio, dis, si, dère, sum, *act.* 3, *to shut* :—Portas, nn. porta.

6 Ranæ cecinerunt *have sung* querelam :—Ranæ, nn. rana :—Cecinerunt, *ind. preter.* 3 pl. cano, anis, ecĭni, anère, antum, *act.* 3, *to sing* :—Querelam, nu. querela.

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, &amp;c.

*The Present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- 1 Porcus grunnit
- 2 Dormiam
- 3 Nihil audio *Ter.*
- 4 Garriunt puëri
- 5 Mugiret bos.

*The Preterperfect Tense, its Derivatives, &c.*

- 6 Leo rugivit
- 7 Certabant cives
- 8 Esuriverint vaccæ.

*The Supine, &c.*

- 9 Ambulatum
- 10 Politurus lignum. *Plin.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS, &amp;c.

- 1 Veniet hora
- 2 Apëri ostium
- 3 Quid sensit senex *Plaut.*
- 4 Hostem vicisse
- 5 Fulsissent domum
- 6 Saluerit equus
- 7 Sepsisse hortum.

What tenses are formed from the present, preterperfect, &c.?

What parts of the verb are formed from the supine, &c.?

Where is the accent in *certabant*? Example 7th.

By what rule do you prove the accent to be on the syllable *tā*?



THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE FOURTH  
CONJUGATION, &c.

- 1 Porcus grunnit *is grunting*:—Porcus, nn.:—Grunnit, *ind. pr. 3 s. grunzio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to grunt.*
- 2 Dormiam *I shall sleep*:—Dormiam, *ind. fut. 1 s. dormio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to sleep.*
- 3 Audio *I hear nihil*:—Audio, *ind. pr. 1 s. audio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *act. 4, to hear*:—Nihil, nn. *indeclinable.*
- 4 Pueri garriunt *prate*:—Pueri, nn. puer:—Garriunt, *ind. pr. 3 pl. garrio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to prate.*
- 5 Bos mugiret *would bellow*:—Bos, nn.:—Mugiret, *pot. preterim. 3 s. mugio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to bellow.*
- 6 Leo rugivit *hath roared*:—Leo, nn.:—Rugivit, *ind. preter. 3 s. rugio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to roar.*
- 7 Cives certabant *strove*:—Cives, nn. civis:—Certabant, *ind. preterim. 3 pl. certo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to strive.*
- 8 Vaccæ esuriverint *shall have desired to eat*:—Vaccæ, nn. vacca:—Esuriverint, *pot. fut. 3 pl. esurio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *neut. 4, to desire to eat.*
- 9 Ambulatum *to walk*:—Ambulatum, *supine act. ambulo*, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1, to walk.*
- 10 Politurus *about to plane lignum*:—Politurus, *part. fut. in rus. polio*, is, īvi, īre, ītum, *act. 4, to polish*:—Lignum, nn.

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

- 1 Hora veniet *will come*:—Hora, nn.:—Veniet, *ind. fut. 3 s. venio*, is, i, īre, tum, *neut. 4, to come.*
- 2 Aperi open ostium:—Aperi, *imp. 2 s. aperio*, is, ui, īre, tum, *act. 4, to open*:—Ostium, nn.
- 3 Quid senex sensit *perceived*:—Quid, *pron. quis*:—Senex, nn.:—Sensit, *ind. preter. 3 s. sentio*, tis, si, tīre, sum, *act. 4, to perceive.*
- 4 Vicisse *to have conquered hostem*:—Vicisse, *inf. preter. vinco*, ncis, nci, ncēre, ctum, *act. 3, to conquer*:—Hostem, nn. hostis.
- 5 Fulsissent *they would have propped domum*:—Fulsissent, *pot. preterpl. 3 pl. fulcio*, cis, si, cīre, tum, *act. 4, to prop*:—Domum, nn. domus.
- 6 Equus saluerit *shall have leaped*:—Equus, nn.:—Saluerit, *pot. fut. 3 s. salio*, is, ui, īre, tum, *act. 4, to leap.*
- 7 Sepsisse *to have hedged hortum*:—Sepsisse, *inf. preter. sepio*, is, īvi, or si, īre, ītum, or tum, *act. 4, to hedge*:—Hortum, nn. hortus.



## OF VERBS PASSIVE, &amp;c.

The *passive verb* signifies *to suffer*, and ends in *or*, as *amor* I am loved.

The passive verb is entirely formed from the active. The preterperfect and preterpluperfect tenses of all the moods, and the future tense potential, are formed from the supine active by changing *m* into *s*, and are declined with the tenses of the verb *sum*: as,

*Amatum, Ama-tus sum, -tus eram, -tus sim, -tus essem, -tus ero, -tum esse, -tum iri, -tus, -ndus.*

In the other tenses, when the active ends in *o*, it is made passive by adding *r*, and in *m* by changing *m* into *r*:

as     { Active, am-o, -abo, -ato, -anto.  
          { Passive, am-or, -abor, -ator, antor.  
and     { Active, am-abam, -arem.  
          { Passive, am-abar, -arer.

The pupil is referred to the paradigm of the passive voice in the Eton Grammar, page 63.

## FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE.

*The Present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Celātur hoc       | 5 Pietāte Deus placātur   |
| 2 Flabītur tibia    | <i>Plaut.</i>             |
| 3 Vincūlo ligāri    | 6 Gubernabuntur discipūli |
| 4 Tempus est parāri | 7 Narrētur veritas.       |

*The Preterperfect Tense, and the Tenses derived from it.*

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 8 Romūlus putātus est | 9 Rogātus sit hospes |
| <i>Eut.</i>           | 10 Sperāta est res   |

## IRREGULAR VERBS, &amp;c.

- |                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Lota est facies | 3 Sectus est ramus   |
| 2 Tempōra dentur  | 4 Sonīta fuerat vox. |

How do you know a passive verb? How are they formed? When the active ends in *o*, how is the passive formed? When in *m*? How is the preterperfect passive formed? What do you annex to the radical word *Cel* to form the *ind. pr. 3 s. &c. &c.*

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

1 Hoc celatur *is concealed*:—Hoc, *pron.*:—Celatur, *ind. pr. 3 s. celor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

2 Tibia flabitur *will be blown*:—Tibia, *nn.*:—Flabitur, *ind. fut. 3 s. flor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

3 Ligari *to be bound* vinculo:—Ligari, *inf. pr. ligor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1*:—Vinculo, *nn. vinculum.*

4 Est *there is* tempus parari *to be prepared*:—Est, *neut. ind. pr. 3 s. sum, es, fui, esse, &c.*:—Tempus, *nn.*:—Parari, *inf. pr. paror, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

5 Deus placatur *is satisfied* pietate:—Deus, *nn.*:—Placatur, *ind. pr. 3 s. placor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1*:—Pietate, *nn. pietas.*

6 Discipuli gubernabuntur *will be governed*:—Discipuli, *nn. discipulus*:—Gubernabuntur, *ind. fut. 3 pl. gubernor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

7 Veritas *let the truth* narretur *be told*:—Veritas, *nn.*:—Narretur, *imp. 3 s. narror, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

8 Romulus putatus est *was thought*:—Romulus, *nn.*:—Putatus est, *ind. preter. 3 s. putor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

9 Hospes rogatus sit *should have been asked*:—Hospes, *nn.*:—Rogatus sit, *pot. preter. 3 s. rogor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

10 Res sperata est *hath been hoped for*:—Res, *nn.*:—Sperata est, *ind. preter. 3 s. speror, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Facies lota est *has been washed*:—Facies, *nn.*:—Lota est, *ind. preter. 3 s. labor, avāris, autus, otus, &c. avāri, pass. 1.*

2 Tempora *let opportunities* dentur *be given*:—Tempora, *nn. tempus*:—Dentur, *imp. 3 pl. dor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

3 Ramus sectus est *has been cut*:—Ramus, *nn.*:—Sectus est, *ind. preter. 3 s. secor, āris, tus, āri, pass. 1.*

4 Vox sonita fuerat *had been sounded*:—Vox, *nn.*:—Sonita fuerat, *ind. preterpl. 3 s. sonor, āris, itus, āri, pass. 1.*

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

*The Present Tense, and the Tenses dependent upon it.*

1 Cæsar magnus habebātur	<i>Sal.</i>
2 Monebuntur juvĕnes	
3 Cimon custodiâ tenebātur	<i>Nep.</i>
4 Timeantur	
5 Mordĕri dente	
6 Vidĕre videor	<i>Ter.</i>
7 Terreantur.	

*The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

8 Puer terrĭtus est	
9 Puellæ terrĭtæ sint	
10 Regnum terrĭtum fuisset	
11 Regna terrĭta sunt	
12 Fletus es	
13 Moti erĭtis	
14 Jussum est bellum	
15 Hic numĕrum duplicāvit	<i>Eut.</i>
16 Tarquinius muros fecit	<i>Eut.</i>
17 Virtus omnia domuĕrat.	<i>Sal.</i>

### IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Docĕbar	
2 Miscentur tristia lætis.	<i>Ov.</i>

What tenses are formed from the present? What from the preterperfect? How is *terrĭtus* declined? What gender is *terrĭtum*? What number and gender is *terrĭta*?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

1 Cæsar habebatur *was esteemed* magnus *a great (man)*:—Cæsar, nn.:—Habebatur, *ind. preterim.* 3 s. habeor, ēris, ūtus, ēri, *pass. 2, to be esteemed*:—Magnus, *adj.*

2 Juvenes monebuntur *shall be advised*:—Juvenes, nn. juvenis:—Monebuntur, *ind. fut.* 3-pl. moneor, ēris, ūtus, ēri, *pass. 2, to be advised.*

3 Cimon tenebatur *was held* custodiâ *in custody*:—Cimon, nn.:—Tenebatur, *ind. preterim.* 3 s. teneor, ēris, tus, ēri, *pass. 2, to be held.*—Custodiâ, nn. custodia.

4 Timeantur *let them be feared*:—Timeantur, *imp.* 3 pl. timeor, ēris, ēri, *pass. 2, to be feared.*

5 Morderi *to be bitten* dente:—Morderi, *inf. pr.* mordeor, dēris, sus, dēri, *pass. 2, to be bitten*:—Dente, nn. dens.

6 Videor *I seem* videre, *to see*, or *I think I see*:—Videor, dēris, sus, dēri, *pass. 2*:—Vidēre, *inf. pr.* video, des, di, dēre, sum, *act. 2, to see.*

7 Terreantur *they may be frightened*:—Terreantur, *pot. pr.* 3 pl. terreor, ēris, ūtus, ēri, *pass. 2, to be frightened.*

8 Puer territus est *has been frightened*:—Puer, nn.:—Territus est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. m. territus declined like bonus. terreor, ēris, ūtus, ēri, *pass. 2, to be frightened.*

9 Puellæ territæ sint *may have been frightened*:—Paellæ, nn. puella:—Territæ sint, *pot. preter.* 3 pl. f. terreor, ēris, &c.

10 Regnum territum fuisset *would have been frightened*:—Regnum, nn.:—Territum fuisset, *pot. preterpl.* 3 s. n. terreor, ēris, &c.

11 Regna territa sunt *have been frightened*:—Regna, nn. regnum:—Territa sunt, *ind. preter.* 3 pl. n. terreor, ēris, &c.

12 Fletus es *thou hast been lamented*:—Fletus es, *ind. preter.* 2 s. fleor, eris, etus, eri, *pass. 2, to be lamented.*

13 Moti eritis *you shall have been moved*:—Moti eritis, *pot. fut.* 2 pl. moveor, vēris, tus, vēri, *pass. 2.*

14 Bellum jussum est *hath been appointed*:—Bellum, nn.:—Jussum est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. n. jubcor, bēris, ssus, bēri, *pass. 2, to be commanded.*

15 Hic duplicavit *doubled* numerum:—Hic, *pron.*:—Duplicavit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. duplico, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act. 1*:—Numerum, nn. numerus.

16 Tarquinius fēcit *built* muros:—Tarquinius, nn.:—Fecit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. facio, acis, eci, acēre, actum, *act. 3*:—Muros, nn. murus.

17 Virtus domuerat *had kept under* omnia:—Virtus, nn.:—Domuerat, *ind. preterpl.* 3 s. domo, as, ui, āre, ūtum, *act. 1, to tame*:—Omnia, *adj.* omnis.

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Docebar *I was taught*:—Docebar, *ind. preterim.* 1 s. doceor, ēris, tus, ēri, *pass. 2.*

2 Tristia *sad (things)* miscentur *are mingled* lætis *with joyful (things)*:—Tristia, *adj.* tristis:—Miscentur, *ind. pr.* 3 pl. misceor, cēris, tus or mixtus sum, cēri, *pass. 2*:—Lætis, *adj.* lætus.



## VERBS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

### *The Present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- 1 Jungimur
- 2 Rogandus
- 3 Sine me trahi
- 4 Nocērer
- 5 Vinci vultu
- 6 Curam fugimus. Cic.
- 7 Emētur.

### *The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- 8 Ducti essent
- 9 Auctum est
- 10 Flectum iri
- 11 Vetīti sunt.

### IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

- 1 Frangebantur
- 2 Homīnes missi sunt
- 3 Falsus est auro
- 4 Satum est frumentum
- 5 Pomum missum sit
- 6 Manūs laventur.

What must be annexed to the radical word *Jung* join, to form the 1 pl. pr. ind. &c.?

What tenses are formed from the present?

From what are the present passive, and all the tenses which end in *r*, formed?



THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE THIRD  
CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

1 Jungimur *we are joined*:—Jungimur, *ind. pr. 1 pl. jungor, gëris, ctus, gi, pass. 3.*

2 Rogandus *to be asked*:—Rogandus, *inf. fut. in dus, rogor, āris, ātus, āri, pass. 1.*

3 Sine *suffer me trahi to be drawn*:—Sine, *imp. 2 s. sino, ivi, inëre, itum, act. 3*:—Me, *pron. ego*:—Trahi, *inf. pass. trahor, hëris, ctus, hi, pass. 3.*

4 Nocerer *I might be hurt*:—Nocerer, *pot. preterim. 1 s. Noceor, ëris, itus, ëri, pass. 2.*

5 Vinci *to be overcome vultu*:—Vinci, *inf. pr. pass. vincor, cëris, ctus, ci, pass. 3*:—Vultu, *nn. vultus.*

6 Fugimus *we avoid curam*:—Fugimus, *ind. pr. 1 pl. fugio, gis, gi, gëre, gïtum, act. 3*:—Curam, *nn. cura.*

7 Emetur *he, she, or it shall be bought*:—Emetur, *ind. fut. 3 s. emor, ëris, ptus, i, pass. 3.*

8 Ducti essent *they would have been led*:—Ducti essent, *pot. preterpl. 3 pl. ducor, ëris, tus, i, pass. 3.*

9 Auctum est *it has been increased*:—Auctum est, *ind. preter. 3 s. augeor, gëris, ctus, gëri, pass. 2.*

10 Flectum iri *to be about to be bended*:—Flectum iri, *inf. fut. flector, ëris, us, i, pass. 3.*

11 Vetiti sunt *they have been forbidden*:—Vetiti sunt, *ind. preter. 3 pl. vetor, āris, itus, āri, pass. 1.*

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Frangebantur *they were broken*:—Frangebantur, *ind. preterim. 3 pl. frangor, ngëris, ctus, ngi, pass. 3.*

2 Homines missi sunt *were sent*:—Homines, *nn. homo*:—Missi sunt, *ind. preter. 3 pl. mittor, ttëris, issus, tti, pass. 3.*

3 Falsus est *he has been deceived anro*:—Falsus est, *ind. preter. 3 s. fallor, lëris, sus, li, pass. 3*:—Auro, *nn. aurum.*

4 Frumentum satum *has been sown*:—Frumentum, *nn.*:—Satum est, *ind. preter. 3 s. n. seror, erëris, atus, eri, pass. 3.*

5 Pomum missum sit *may have been sent*:—Missum sit, *pot. preter. 3 s. mittor, ttëris, ssus, tti, pass. 3*:—Pomum, *nn.*

6 Manus *let the hands laventur be washed*:—Manus, *nn.*:—Laventur, *imp. 3 pl. lavor, avāris, autus, otus, &c. avāri, pass. 1.*

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

### *The Present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| 1 Nutrītur vento ignis | <i>Ov.</i> |
| 2 Poliebantur tabŭlæ   |            |
| 3 Nos puniāmur         |            |
| 4 Negabāris            |            |
| 5 Scirer.              |            |

### *The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                                    |             |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| 6 Equitātus hostiŭm impeditus est  |             |
| 7 Pater ejus generōsus fuit        | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 8 Lis ejus æstimāta sit            |             |
| 9 Junctum esse                     |             |
| 10 Nominātus erat vir bonus        |             |
| 11 Aristīdes Justus est appellātus | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 12 Phocion Bonus est appellātus.   | <i>Nep.</i> |

### IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 Sepeliebātur Aristīdes |  |
| 2 Sarta est ædes mea     |  |
| 3 Nomen datum est        |  |
| 4 Nos scelēre solvāmur.  |  |

How is the preterperfect tense passive formed?

What must be added to the radical word to form the preterimperfect, 3 s. &c.?

Where is the accent in *poliebantur*? (Example 2.) Why is the *a* long? Why is the accent on the syllable *bant*? Why on *hos* in *hostiŭm*? (Example 6.) Why is the *i* short in *hostiŭm*?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF VERBS IN THE FOURTH  
CONJUGATION PASSIVE, &c.

1 Ignis nutritur *is fed* vento :—Ignis, nn. :—Nutritur, *ind. pr.* 3 s. *nutrior*, īris, ītus, īri, *pass.* 4 :—Vento, nn. ventus.

2 Tabulæ poliebantur *were polished* :—Tabulæ, nn. tabula :—Poliebantur, *ind. preterim.* 3 pl. *polior*, īris, ītus, īri, *pass.* 4.

3 Nos puniamur *may be punished* :—Nos, pron. ego :—Puniamur, *pot. pr.* 1 pl. *punior*, īris, ītus, īri, *pass.* 4.

4 Negabaris *thou wast denied* :—Negabaris, *ind. preterim.* 2 s. *negor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1.

5 Scirer *I might be known* :—Scirer, *pot. preterim.* 1 s. *scior*, iris, itus, iri, *pass.* 4.

6 Equitatus hostium impeditus est *has been hindered* :—Equitatus, nn. :—Hostium, nn. hostis :—Impeditus est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. *impedior*, iris, itus, iri, *pass.* 4.

7 Pater ejus fuit *was* generosus :—Pater, nn. :—Ejus, *pron.* is, ea, id :—Fuit, *ind. preter.* 3 s. *sum*, es, fui, &c. :—Generosus, nn.

8 Lis *the fine* ejus *of him* æstimata sit *may be set* :—Lis, nn. :—Ejus, *pron.* is, &c. :—Æstimata sit, *pot. preter.* 3 s. f. *æstimor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1.

9 Junctum esse *to have been joined* :—Junctum esse, *inf. preter.* jungor, gēris, ctus, gi, *pass.* 3.

10 Nominatus erat *he had been called* vir bonus :—Nominatus erat, *ind. preterpl.* 3 s. *nominor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1 :—Vir, nn. :—Bonus, *adj.*

11 Aristides appellatus est *was called* Justus *the Just* :—Aristides, nn. :—Appellatus est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. *appellor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1 :—Justus, nn.

12 Phocion appellatus est *was called* Bonus *the Good* :—Phocion, nn. :—Appellatus est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. *appellor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1 :—Bonus, nn.

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Aristides sepeliebatur *was buried* :—Aristides, nn. :—Sepeliebatur, *ind. preterim.* 3 s. *sepelior*, eliris, ultus, eliri, *pass.* 4.

2 Mea ædes sarta est *has been repaired* :—Mea, *pron.* meus, a, um :—Ædes, nn. :—Sarta est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. f. *sarcior*, cīris, tus, cīri, *pass.* 4.

3 Nomen datum est *has been given* :—Nomen, nn. :—Datum est, *ind. preter.* 3 s. n. *dor*, āris, ātus, āri, *pass.* 1.

4 Nos solvamur *may be released* scelere :—Nos, *pron.* ego :—Solvamur, *pot. pr.* 1 pl. *solvor*, vēris, ūtus, vi, *pass.* 3 :—Scelere, nn. scelus.

## OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Some verbs have a passive form and an active signification : they are called Deponent verbs (from *depono* to lay down), because they have deposed or laid down the active form of the verb.

The preterperfect tense of deponent verbs is formed by supposing an active voice, from the supine of which comes the participle, to which *sum* is added : thus, *imitor, imitatus sum*, as if from *imito, as, avi, are*, and the supine *imitatum*, and hence the participle *imitatus*, to which *sum* is annexed making *imitatus sum*.

*The present Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                            |             |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1 Potest memoria recordāri | <i>Eut.</i> |
| 2 Deos precāri             | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 3 Me crimināris.           |             |

*The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 4 Miltiādes hortātus est pontis custōdes | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 5 Mirātūrum esse                         |             |
| 6 Mirātum iri                            |             |
| 7 Adulātus erit amīcum                   |             |
| 8 Functi sunt muneribus                  |             |
| 9 Meritum esse.                          |             |

## IRREGULAR DEPONENT VERBS.

- |                                  |               |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Loquēre nomen tuum             | <i>Plaut.</i> |
| 2 Sequitur patrem passibus æquis | <i>Virg.</i>  |
| 3 Hic ortus est                  | <i>Cæs.</i>   |
| 4 Labitur ætas                   | <i>Ov.</i>    |

Why are verbs having a passive form, and an active signification, called deponent?

How is the preterperfect tense formed?

Are they better supplied with participles than other verbs?



THE CONSTRUING AND-PARSING OF VERBS DEPO-  
NENT, &c.

1 Memoria, potest *is* able recordari *to remember* :—Memoria, nn. :—Potest, *ind. pr. 3 s.* possum, tes, tui, &c. :—Recordari, *inf. pr.* recordor, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.*

2 Precari *to pray* deos :—Precari, *inf. pr.* precor, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.* :—Deos, nn. deus.

3 Criminaris *you accuse* me :—Criminaris, *ind. pr. 2 s.* criminor, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.* :—Me, *pron.* ego.

4 Miltiades hortatus est *exhorted* custodes pontis :—Miltiades, nn. :—Hortatus est, *ind. preter. 3 s.* hortor, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.* :—Custodes, nn. custos :—Pontis, nn. pons.

5 Miraturum esse *shall admire* :—Miraturum esse, *inf. fut. act.* miror, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.*

6 Miratum iri *shall be admired* :—Miratum iri, *inf. fut. pass.* miror, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.*

7 Adulatus erit *he will have flattered* amicum :—Adulatus erit, *pot. fut. 3 s.* adulor, āris, ātus, āri, *dep. 1.* :—Amicum, nn. amicus.

8 Functi sunt *they have discharged* muneribus (*their*) duties :—Functi sunt, *ind. preter. 3 pl.* fungor, gēris, etus, gi, *dep. 3.* :—Muneribus, nn. munus.

9 Meritum esse *to have deserved* :—Meritum esse, *inf. preter.* mereor, ēris, ĩtus, ēri, *dep. 2.*

IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 Loquere  *speak or tell* tuum nomen :—Loquere, *imp. 2 s.* loquor, quēris, cūtus, qui, *dep. 3. irr.* :—Tuum, *pron.* tuus :—Nomen, nn.

2 Sequitur *he follows* patrem æquis passibus :—Sequitur, *ind. pr. 3 s.* sequor, quēris, cūtus, qui, *dep. 3.* :—Patrem, nn. pater :—Æquis, *adj.* æquus :—Passibus, un. passus.

3 Hic ortus est *has risen* :—Hic, *pron.* :—Ortus est, *ind. preter. 3 s.* orior, ĩris, tus, ĩri, *dep. 4.*

4 Ætas labitur *glides away* :—Ætas, nn. :—Labitur, *ind. pr. 3 s.* labor, hēris, psus, bi, *dep. 3. irr.*



## OF NEUTER PASSIVE AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

Some neuter verbs, having their present and dependent tenses after the active form, and their preterperfects and tenses derived from them after the passive form, are called neuter passives.

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1 Acies certāre solēbant | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 2 Fidēbam ingenio        |              |
| 3 Nemo ausus est         |              |
| 4 Puer acri gaudet equo. | <i>Virg.</i> |

A few irregular verbs very frequently occur ; they are, therefore, generally conjugated in the Grammar.

- |                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 Eāmus                               |             |
| 2 Athenienses colōnos vellent mittēre | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 3 Themistōcles reverti nollet         | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 4 Dic mihi                            | <i>Ter.</i> |
| 5 Ibant leōnes                        |             |
| 6 Duc me                              |             |
| 7 Loquēre quid velis                  | <i>Ter.</i> |
| 8 I, sequar.                          | <i>Ter.</i> |

### *The Preterperfect Tense and its Derivatives.*

- |                                |             |
|--------------------------------|-------------|
| 9 Latus sit                    |             |
| 10 Omnis pecunia translāta est | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 11 Potuissem                   |             |
| 12 Chabrias perīre maluit      | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 13 Potuit, cecidisse vidēri.   | <i>Ov.</i>  |

What are those neuter verbs called which derive the preterperfect tenses from the passive voice ? Give an example.

Why are some irregular verbs given in Grammars ?

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS,  
&c.

1 *Acies solebant were accustomed certare to fight*:—*Acies*, nn.:—*Solebant*, *ind. preterim.* 3 *pl. soleo*, *es*, *ītus*, *ēre*, *neut. pass.* 2:—*Certare*, *inf. pr. certo*, *as*, *āvi*, *āre*, *ātum*, *act.* 1.

2 *Fidebam I trusted ingenio*:—*Fidebam*, *ind. preterim.* 1 *s. fido*, *des*, *di*, *and sus*, *dēre*, *neut.* 3:—*Ingenio*, nn. *ingenium*.

3 *Nemo ausus est durst*:—*Nemo*, nn.:—*Ausus est*, *ind. preter.* 3 *s. audeo*, *des*, *sus*, *dēre*, *neut.* 2.

4 *Puer gaudet rejoices acri equo*:—*Puer*, nn.:—*Gaudet*, *ind. pr.* 3 *s. gaudeo*, *udes*, *vīsus*, *udēre*, *neut. pass.* 2:—*Acri*, *adj. acris*:—*Equo*, nn. *equus*.

THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

1 *Eamus let us go*:—*Eamus*, *imp.* 1 *pl. eo*, *is*, *ivi*, *ire*, *itum*, *to go*, *irr.* 4.

2 *Athenienses vellent were desirous mittere to send colonos*:—*Athenienses*, nn.:—*Vellent*, *pot. preterim.* 3 *pl. volo*, *vis*, &c.:—*Mittere*, *inf. pr. mitto*:—*Colonos*, nn. *colonus*.

3 *Themistocles nollet was unwilling reverti to return*:—*Themistocles*, nn.:—*Nollet*, *pot. preterim.* 3 *s. nolo*, *nvis*, *lui*, *lle*, *irr.*:—*Reverti*, *inf. pr. revertor*, *tēris*, *sus*, *ti*, *dep.* 3.

4 *Dic tell mihi*:—*Dic*, *imp.* 2 *s. contracted from dice*; *dico*, *cis*, *xi*, &c.:—*Mihi*, *pron. ego*.

5 *Leones ibant went*:—*Leones*, nn. *leo*:—*Ibant*, *ind. preterim.* 3 *pl. eo*, *is*, *ivi*, *ire*, *itum*, *irr.* 4.

6 *Duc lead me*:—*Duc*, *imp.* 2 *s. contracted from duce*; *duco*, *cis*, *xi*, &c.:—*Me*, *pron. ego*.

7 *Loquere speak quid velis you wish*:—*Loquere*, *imp.* 2 *s. loquor*, *quēris*, *cūtus*, *qui*, *dep.* 3:—*Quid*, *pron. quis*:—*Velis*, *pot. pr.* 2 *s. volo*, *irr.*

8 *I go thou, sequar I will follow*:—*I*, *imp.* 2 *s. eo*, *is*, *ivi*, *ire*, *itum*, *irr.* 4:—*Sequar*, *ind. fut.* 1 *s. sequor*, &c.

9 *Latus sit he should have been borne*:—*Latus sit*, *pot. preter.* 3 *s. feror*, *ferris*, *latus*, *ferri*, *irr.*

10 *Omnis pecunia translata est was carried*:—*Omnis*, *adj.*:—*Pecunia*, nn.:—*Translata est*, *ind. preter.* 3 *s. f. transfero*, *fers*, *tūli*, &c. *irr.*

11 *Potuissem I might have been able*:—*Potuissem*, *pot. preterpl.* 1 *s. possum*, &c. *irr.*

12 *Chabrias maluit would rather perire perish*:—*Chabrias*, nn.:—*Maluit*, *ind. preter.* 3 *s. malo*, &c. *irr.*:—*Perire*, *inf. pr. pereo*, *neut.* 4.

13 *Potuit it could videri be seen cecidisse to have fallen*:—*Potuit*, *ind. preter.* 3 *s. possum*, &c. *irr.*:—*Videri*, *inf. pr. videor*, *pass.* 2:—*Cecidisse*, *inf. preter. cado*, *cecidi*, *cadēre*, *casum*, *neut.* 3.

## OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those which want several parts.

A few verbs, in other respects regular, want some tenses, as,

- 1 Cœpisti
- 2 Odi malum
- 3 Meminissem.

Many other verbs are defective in most of the tenses.

- |                      |               |
|----------------------|---------------|
| 4 Dic quæso          | <i>Ter.</i>   |
| 5 Quid ais?          | <i>Ter.</i>   |
| 6 Cedo aquam manibus | <i>Plaut.</i> |
| 7 Avēte              |               |
| 8 Salve              |               |
| 9 Sorōrem esse aiunt | <i>Ter.</i>   |
| 10 Inquit            |               |
| 11 Faxo              |               |
| 12 Dicere ausint.    |               |

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are only used in the third person singular. They are of all conjugations, and may have *it* before them in English.

- |                          |               |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Decet me               | <i>Plaut.</i> |
| 2 Tædet nos vitæ         | <i>Cic.</i>   |
| 3 Peccare nemini licet   | <i>Cic.</i>   |
| 4 Hoc tempore pugnatur   | <i>Cæs.</i>   |
| 5 Tibi videtur           |               |
| 6 Me ejus miseritum est. | <i>Plaut.</i> |

What are defective verbs? Give me an example.

What are impersonal verbs? What may be placed before them?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF DEFECTIVE VERBS, &amp;c.

1 *Cœpisti thou hast begun*:—Cœpisti, *ind. preter.* 2 s. cœpi, isti, ěram, ěrim, issem, ěro, isse, *def.*

2 *Odi I hate or have hated malum*:—Odi, *ind. pr. and preter.* odi, ěram, ěrim, issem, ěro, isse, *def.*:—Malum, nn.

3 *Meminissem I would have remembered*:—Meminissem, *pot. preterpl.* 1 s. memini, ěram, ěrim, issem, ěro, isse, *def.*

4 *Dic tell (me), quæso I pray*:—Dic, *imp.* 2 s. dico, cis, xi, cĕre, *act.* 3:—Quæso, *ind. pr.* 1 s. quæso, is, it, ůmus, ěre, *def.*

5 *Quid ais do you say*:—Quid, *pron. quis*:—Ais, *ind. pr.* 2 s. aio, is, it, *pl.* aiunt, *def.*

6 *Cedo give me aquam manibus*:—Cedo, *imp.* 2 s. cedo, *pl.* cedĭte, *def.*:—Me, *pron. ego*:—Aquam, nn. aqua:—Manibus, nn. manus.

7 *Avete hail ye*:—Avete, *imp.* 2 *pl.* ave, ěto, *pl.* ěte, etĕte, ěre, *def.*

8 *Salve God save you*:—Salve, *imp.* 2 s. salve, ěto, ěre, *def.*

9 *Aiunt they say esse that she is sororem*:—Aiunt, *ind. pr.* 3 *pl.* aio, is, it, *def.*:—Ěsse, *inf. pr.* sum, es, &c.:—Sororem, nn. soror.

10 *Inquit he says*:—Inquit, *ind. pr.* 3 s. inquĭo, is, it, *pl.* ĭmus, iunt, iens, *def.*

11 *Faxo I will do it*:—Faxo, *ind. or pot. fut.* 1 s. faxo, is, it, *pl.* ĭmus, ĭtis, int, *def.*

12 *Ausint they may dare dicere to speak*:—Ausint, *ind. or pot.* 3 *pl.* ausim, is, it, *pl.* int, *def.*:—Dicere, *inf. pr.* dico.

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF IMPERSONAL VERBS, &amp;c.

1 *Decet it behoveth me me*:—Decet, *ind. pr.* 3 s. decet, ěbat, uit, uĕrat, ěbit, eat, eat, ěret, uĕrit, uĭsset, uĕrit, ěre, uisse, *impers.* 2:—Me, *pron. ego*.

2 *Tædet it wearies nos us, or we are weary vitæ*:—Tædet, *ind. pr.* 3 s. tædet, dĕbat, duit, &c. *impers.* 2:—Nos, *pron. ego*:—Vitæ, nn. vita.

3 *Licet it is lawful nemini peccare to do wrong or sin*:—Licet, *ind. pr.* 3 s. licet, licĕbat, licuit, &c. *impers.* 2:—Nemini, nn. nemo:—Peccare, *inf. pr.* pecco, as, āvi, āre, ātum, *act.* 1.

4 *Pugnatur it was fought hoc tempore*:—Pugnatur, *ind. pr.* 3 s. pugnatur, abātur, ātum est, āri, *pass.* 1:—Hoc, *pron. hic*:—Tempore, nn. tempus.

5 *Videtur it seemeth good tibi*:—Videtur, *ind. pr.* 3 s. vidĕtur, vidĕbātur, visum est, &c. *impers.* 2:—Tibi, *pron. tu*.

6 *Miseritum est it has pitied me ejus of him, or I have pitied him*:—Miseritum est, *ind. preter. n.* misĕret, misertum and miserĭtum est, *impers.*:—Me, *pron. ego*:—Ejus, *pron. is*.



## CHAP. V.—OF PARTICIPLES.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of adjective, formed from a verb, and, like a verb, signifies being, doing, or suffering: as, *a loving child*. Here *loving*, like an adjective, denotes the quality of the child; and, like a verb, it signifies action, for *a loving child* is the same as *a child that loves*.

A Participle is so named (from *participo* to partake of) because in Latin it partakes of gender and declension with an adjective, and of time and signification with the verb.

In Latin, active participles are declined like adjectives of one termination, and the passive like those of three endings.

### ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

1 Multa pollicens	Nep.
2 Tuam petens amicitiam	Nep.
3 Aristīdes animadvertēbat quendam scribentem	Nep.
4 Sequenti anno.	Eut.

### PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

5 Condītā civitatē	Eut.
6 Adventu eōrum cognīto	Nep.
7 Delectā manu	Nep.
8 Delenda est Carthāgo	
9 Disjectis copiis	Nep.
10 Sudōre deterso	Eut.
11 Occasiōne repertā	Eut.
12 Duces factiōnis damnātos	Nep.
13 Se damnatūros eum	Nep.
14 Hāc re audītā.	Nep.

What is a participle? Why is it called a participle? Give me an example of a participle. Which word is the participle in these sentences? a written copy; an entreating letter; a requested letter, &c. What are active participles declined like? What the other?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

1 Pollicens *promising multa many (things)*:—Pollicens, *part. nom. s. pollicens, entis*:—Multa, *adj. multus*.

2 Petens *seeking tuam amicitiam*:—Petens, *part. nom. s. petens, entis*:—Tuam, *pron. tuus*:—Amicitiam, *nn. amicitia*.

3 Aristides animadvertibat *observed quendam scribentem writing*:—Aristides, *nn.*:—Animadvertibat, *ind. preterim. 3 s. animadverto*:—Quendam, *pron. quidam*:—Scribentem, *part. ac. s. scribens, tis*.

4 Sequenti *in the following anno*:—Sequenti, *part. ab. s. m. sequens, tis*:—Anno, *nn. annus*.

5 Civitate *the city conditâ being built*:—Civitate, *nn. civitas*:—Conditâ, *part. ab. s. f. conditus, a, um*.

6 Adventu *the coming eorum cognito being known*:—Adventu, *nn. adventus*:—Eorum, *pron. is*:—Cognito, *part. ab. s. m. cognitus, a, um*.

7 Delectâ *with a chosen manu*:—Delectâ, *part. ab. s. f. delectus, a, um*:—Manu, *nn. manus*.

8 Carthago delenda est *must be destroyed*:—Carthago, *nn.*:—Delenda *part. in dus, nom. s. f. delendus, a, um*: Est *ind. pr. 3 s. sum*.

9 Copiis *the forces disiectis being overthrown*:—Copiis, *nn. copiae*:—Disiectis, *part. ab. pl. f. disiectus, a, um*.

10 Sudore *the perspiration deterso being rubbed off*:—Sudore, *nn. sudor*:—Deterso, *part. ab. s. m. deterus, a, um*.

11 Occasione *an opportunity repertâ being found*:—Occasione, *nn. occasio*:—Repertâ, *part. ab. s. f. repertus, a, um*.

12 Damnatos *having condemned duces factionis*:—Damnatos, *part. ac. pl. m. damnatus, a, um*:—Duces, *nn. dux*:—Factionis, *nn. factio*.

13 Se *that they damnatos would condemn eum*:—Se, *pron. sui*:—Damnatos, *part. ac. pl. m. damnaturus, a, um*:—Eum, *pron. is*.

14 Hâc re auditâ *being heard*:—Hâc, *pron. hic*:—Re, *nn. res*:—Auditâ, *part. ab. s. f. auditus, a, um*.

## CHAP. VI.—OF ADVERBS.

AN ADVERB (derived from *ad* to *verbum* the word or verb) shows the quality of the being, action, or passion of the verb, as the adjective points out the quality of a name. John walks well: He speaks correctly: I talk seriously: He is well. Here *well*, *correctly*, and *seriously*, are adverbs, because they show the quality of the action.

- 1 Expecta paulispèr
- 2 Falsò me crimināris
- 3 Invōca illum illīcò
- 4 Quò propèras? Quomōdò expōnis?

*An* and *Ne* are used in asking questions; the former is placed before, and the latter after a word.

- 5 An amas? or Amāsne?
- 6 An nòn es? or Nonnè es?
- 7 An is est? *Ter.* Idnè est verum? *Ter.*

Adverbs admit of degrees of comparison.

- |                               |             |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 8 Faciliùs intelligi possit   | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 9 Fortitèr pugnāvit           | <i>Cæs.</i> |
| 10 Fortiùs pugnāveram         |             |
| 11 Fortissimè pugnāverunt     |             |
| 12 Facillimè intelligis       | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 13 Propiùs muros accessit     | <i>Nep.</i> |
| 14 Meliùs dico. Optimè dixit. |             |

What words denote the quality of a verb or action? What is an adverb? Give me an example. Why is it called an adverb? Are adverbs compared? Give me an example.

## CHAP. VII.—OF CONJUNCTIONS.

CONJUNCTIONS join words and sentences together: as, John *and* Charles: John walks, *but* Thomas runs.

- |                                 |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| 1 Captīva tamen, et ancilla     | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 2 Nòn castra, sed naves         | <i>Nep.</i>  |
| 3 Veniensque rex                | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 4 Iterūmq̃ue iterūmq̃ue monēbo. | <i>Virg.</i> |

What is a conjunction? Give me an example. How can you distinguish an adverb from a conjunction?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF ADVERBS, &amp;c.

1 *Expecta paulispèr a little while*:—*Expecta, act. expecto\**:—*Paulispèr, adv.*

2 *Criminaris me falsò falsely*:—*Criminaris, dep. crimīnor*:—*Me, pron. ego*:—*Falsò, adv.*

3 *Invoca illum illicò directly*:—*Invoca, act. invoco*:—*Illum. pron. ille, a, ud*:—*Illicò, adv.*

4 *Quò whither properas?*—*Quò, adv.*:—*Properas, act. propèro.*

*Quomodò how exponis?*—*Quomodò, adv.*:—*Exponis, act. expōno.*

5 *An amas or amas ne dost thou love?*—*An, adv.*:—*Amas, act. amo*:—*Nè, adv.*

6 *An non es or Nonnè es art thou not?*—*An, adv.*:—*Non, adv.*:—*Es, neut. sum*:—*Nè, adv.*

7 *An is est is it he?*—*An, adv.*:—*Is, pron.*:—*Est, neut. sum.*

*Idnè est is not that verum true?*—*Id, pron. is*:—*Nè, adv.*:—*Est, neut. sum*:—*Verum, adj. verus.*

8 *Possit faciliùs more easily intelligi*:—*Possit, irr. possum*:—*Faciliùs, adv. comp. from facilè*:—*Intelligi, pass. intelligo.*

9 *Pugnavit fortitèr bravely*:—*Pugnavit, act. pugno*:—*Fortitèr, adv.*

10 *Pugnaveram fortiùs more bravely*:—*Pugnaveram, act. pugno*:—*Fortiùs, adv. comp. from fortitèr.*

11 *Pugnaverunt fortissimè most bravely*:—*Pugnaverunt, act. pugno*:—*Fortissimè, adv. sup. from fortitèr, iùs, issimè.*

12 *Intelligis facillimè most easily*:—*Intelligis, act. intelligo*:—*Facillimè, adv. sup. from facilè, iùs, līmè.*

13 *Accéssit propiùs nearer muros*:—*Accessit, act. accēdo*:—*Propiùs, adv. comp. from prope*:—*Muros, nn. murus.*

14 *Dico meliùs better*:—*Dico, act.*:—*Meliùs, adv. comp. from benè, optimè.*

*Dixit optimè best or very well*:—*Dixit, act. dico*:—*Optimè, adv. sup. from benè, &c.*

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF CONJUNCTIONS, &amp;c.

1 *Tamen although captiva et and ancilla*:—*Tamen, conj.*:—*Cap-tiva, nn.*:—*Et, conj.*:—*Ancilla, nn.*

2 *Nòn castra, sed but naves*:—*Nòn, adv.*:—*Castra, nn.*:—*Sed, conj.*:—*Naves, nn.*

3 *Que and rex veniens*:—*Que, conj.*:—*Rex, nn.*:—*Veniens, act. venio.*

4 *Que and monebo itèrùm que and itèrùm*:—*Que, conj.*:—*Mone-bo, act. moneo*:—*Itèrùm, adv.*

---

\* The same directions which were previously given for nouns, will generally serve for looking out verbs in the Dictionary: for, as the inflection of verbs is chiefly performed by the addition of syllables to the radical part of the word, the indicative mood present tense of a verb will generally be found by rejecting the changeable termination, and annexing *o* or *or* to the part of the word remaining. Thus *crimīnāris* comes from *crimīnor*; because when *aris* is rejected and *or* added, it is *crimīnor*. So *pugnaverāram* is from *pugno*; because when *averam* is rejected and *o* added, it is *pugno*. The changeable terminations of verbs may be known by referring to the TABLE at page 38.



## CHAP. VIII.—OF PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is generally set before the word which it governs (*præ* before and *positus* placed), to shew the relation it bears to some other word: as, He went *to* London: a man *of* wisdom.

These prepositions govern the accusative case.

- 1 Ad hoc consilium. *Nep.* Adversus te. *Cic.*
- 2 Ante ostium. *Plaut.* Apud forum est. *Ter.*
- 3 Circa regem. *Virg.* Inter nos
- 4 Per me. *Eut.* Post excidium. *Eut.*
- 5 Præter opiniōnem. Ire Brundisium versus. *Cic.*

These prepositions govern the ablative case, &c.

- 1 A dominiōne. Ab exordio. *Eut.*
- 2 Coram senātu. Cum fratre. *Eut.*

*Cum* is put after the ablative case of some of the pronouns.

- 3 Vade mecum. De hominibus
- 4 Ex Asiâ. *Nep.* In Eurōpam. *Nep.*
- 5 Præ foribus.

*Tenus* is set after its case: as,

- 6 Mento tenus. Crurum tenus
- 7 Ibo in urbem. *Or.* In urbe vivere.

What is a preposition? Give me an example. What prepositions govern the accusative case? Where is *versus* placed? What prepositions govern the ablative case? Where is *cum* placed when written with *me*, *se*, *nobis*, &c.? Where is *tenus* placed? What case does *tenus* govern in the plural number? What case does *in* govern when it signifies *into*? What when merely *in*?

## THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF PREPOSITIONS, &amp;c.

1 *Ad to hoc consilium* :—*Ad, prep.* :—*Hoc, pron. hic* :—*Consilium, nn.*

*Adversus against te* :—*Adversus, prep.* :—*Te, pron. tu.*

2 *Ante before ostium* :—*Ante, prep.* :—*Ostium, nn.*

*Est apud at forum* :—*Est, neut. sum* :—*Apud, prep.* :—*Forum, nn.*

3 *Circa about regem* :—*Circa, prep.* :—*Regem, nn.*

*Inter between nos* :—*Inter, prep.* :—*Nos, pron. ego.*

4 *Per by me* :—*Per, prep.* :—*Me, pron. ego.*

*Post after excidium* :—*Post, prep.* :—*Excidium, nn.*

5 *Præter contrary to opinionem* :—*Præter, prep.* :—*Opinionem, nn.*

*Ire versus towards Brundisium* :—*Ire, irr. eo* :—*Versus, prep.* :—*Brundisium, nn.*

1 *A from dominatione* :—*A, prep.* :—*Dominatione, nn.*

*Ab from exordio* :—*Ab, prep.* :—*Exordio, nn.*

2 *Coram before senatu* :—*Coram, prep.* :—*Senatu, nn.*

*Cum with fratre* :—*Cum, prep.* :—*Fratre, nn.*

3 *Vade cum with me* :—*Vade, act. vado* :—*Cum, prep.* :—*Me, pron. ego.*

*De of or concerning hominibus* :—*De, prep.* :—*Hominibus, nn.*

4 *Ex out of Asiâ* :—*Ex, prep.* :—*Asiâ, nn.*

*In into Europam* :—*In, prep.* :—*Europam, nn.*

5 *Præ before foribus* :—*Præ, prep.* :—*Foribus, nn.*

6 *Tenus as far as mento* :—*Tenus, prep.* :—*Mento, nn.*

*Tenus as far as crurum* :—*Tenus, prep.* :—*Crurum, nn.*

7 *Ibo in into urbem* :—*Ibo, irr. eo* :—*In, prep.* :—*Urbem, nn.*

*Vivere in in urbe* :—*Vivere, act. vivo* :—*In, prep.* :—*Urbe, nn.*

## COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

An acquaintance with the prepositions used in composition\* will greatly contribute to the young student's knowledge of the language. From a few radical terms many words are formed, which retain the signification of their simple parts. As compounds are generally declined like their radicals, the recollection of the radical word will be sufficient to bring to the learner's mind its numerous

---

\* Some words will not admit of being combined with so many prepositions; but most words admit of it in some degree; and, from the examples here given, it will be seen how useful it is to be acquainted with the composition of words. In the following examples, from 16 simple words are formed about 150.

derivatives, and will most deeply impress on his mind the precise signification of many words, which could otherwise scarcely be ascertained.

In addition to the prepositions given in the preceding page, the following are used in composition : *am* or *amb* about or around ; *con* is used for *cum* with or together ; *di* or *dis* asunder ; *re* again, against, or back ; *se* apart ; *sub* or *subter* under, &c. *In* before adjectives signifies *not*.

1 Ego discipulos habeo.	
2 Cautus velim esse ac diligens.	Cic.
3 Sat̄s doct̄e, ac per̄it̄e, fecisti.	Cic.
4 Me ad credendum tua ducit oratio.	Sal.
5 Cedam atque ab̄ibo.	Cic.
6 Solon Atheniensium leges scripsit.	Cic.
7 Mitte hanc de pectore curam.	Cic.
8 Equos ad mœnia vertunt.	Virg.
9 Amnes in æquora currunt.	Virg.
10 Cumbando in lecto.	Virg.
11 Dùm tempus datur.	Plaut.
12 Omnia fert ætas.	Ter.
13 Retia ponere cervis.	Virg.
14 Ipse capellas prot̄ens æger ago.	Virg.
15 Cadēbat ut vellem.	Virg.
16 Pacis fundamenta jeci.	Cic.
	Cic.

Do compound words retain the signification of their simple parts? How are compounds declined? Are prepositions combined with nouns, adverbs, and verbs? Give the signification of each word in its simple and compound state, as *duco* to lead, *ad* to, *adduco* to lead to.

#### THE CONSTRUING AND PARSING OF COMPOUND WORDS.

1 Ego habeo discipulos :—Ego, *pron.* :—Habeo, *act.* :—Discipulos, *nn.* :—*Discipulus* is compounded with *cum*, and becomes *con-discipulus* a school-fellow.

2 Velim esse cautus ac diligens :—Velim, *irr. volo* :—Esse, *neut. sum* :—Cautus, *adj.* :—Ac, *conj.* *Cautus* is compounded with *in* and *per* ; as *cautus* cautious, *incautus* not or incautious, *percautus* thoroughly or very cautious.

3 Fecisti doct̄e ac per̄it̄e sat̄s :—Fecisti, *act. facio* :—Doct̄e, *adv.* :—Ac, *conj.* :—Per̄it̄e, *adv.* :—Sat̄s, *adv.* *Doct̄e* has *in* and *per* ; as *indoct̄e* not learned or unlearned, *perdoct̄e* thoroughly learned or very learned.

4. *Tua oratio ducit me ad credendum*:—*Tua*, *pron.* *tuus*:—*Oratio*, *nn.*:—*Ducit*, *act.* *duco*:—*Me*, *pron.* *ego*:—*Ad*, *prep.*:—*Credendum*, *act.* *credo*. *Duco* admits before it *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *circum*, *de*, *e*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *pro*, *se*, *sub*, *trans*: and becomes *abduco* to lead from, away, &c.; *adduco* to lead to or bring; *conduco* to lead together with or conduce; and so of its other compounds, uniting the signification of the preposition with the verb.

5 *Cedam atque abibo*:—*Cedam*, *act.* *cedo*:—*Atque*, *conj.*:—*Abibo*, *neut.* *abeo*. *Cedo* may admit these prepositions; *abs*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *dis*, *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *pre*, *pro*, *re*, *se*, *sub*.

6 *Solon scripsit leges Atheniensium*:—*Solon*, *nn.*:—*Scripsit*, *act.* *scribo*. *Scribo* is compounded with *ad*, *circum*, *con*, *de*, *ex*, *per*, *præ*, *pro*, *re*, *sub*, *trans*; as *adscribo* or *asscribo*, or *ascribo*,—for when a preposition ending with a consonant is combined with a verb, the last letter becomes the same with the first of the verb, or some other that will easily unite with it, and sometimes it is omitted, as in *ascribo*, for the sake of sound.

7 *Mitte hanc curam de pectore*:—*Mitte*, *act.* *mitto*:—*Hanc*, *pron.*:—*Curam*, *nn.*:—*De*, *prep.*:—*Pectore*, *nn.* *Mitto* admits of composition with *ad*, *con*, *de*, *di*, *e*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *præ*, *pro*, *re*, *sub*; as *admitto*, *con* or *committo*, the *n* being changed into *m*, for the reason mentioned in the last.

8 *Vertunt equos ad mœnia*:—*Equos*, *nn.*:—*Ad*, *prep.*:—*Mœnia*, *nn.*:—*Vertunt* *act.* *verto*—*a*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *præ*, *re*, *sub*.

9 *Amnès currunt in æquora*:—*Amnès*, *nn.*:—*In*, *prep.*:—*Æquora*, *nn.*:—*Currunt*, *neut.* *curro*—*ad*, *circum*, *con*, *de*, *dis*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *præ*, *pro*, *re*, *sub*.

10 *Cumbando in lecto*:—*Cumbando*, *neut.* *Cubo*:—*In*, *prep.*:—*Lecto*, *nn.* It is the third conjugation when compounded with *ac*, *con*, *de*, *dis*, *in*, *oc*, *pro*, *re*, *suc*, *super*, *in*.

11 *Dum tempus datur*:—*Dum*, *adv.*:—*Tempus*, *nn.*:—*Datur*, *pass.* *do*. *Do* is compounded with *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *di*, *e*, *in*, *per*, *pro*. See Jones's Grammar of the Latin Tongue, under *Do*, page 67.

12 *Ætas fert omnia all things*:—*Ætas*, *nn.*:—*Fert*, *irr.* *fero*:—*Omnia*, *adj.* *Fero* admits of these prepositions before it—*ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *dis*, *e*, *in*, *per*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *se*; as *abfëro* or *affëro*, the *b* being changed into *f*, for the reasons previously assigned.

13 *Ponere retia cervis*:—*Retia*, *nn.*:—*Cervis*, *nn.*:—*Ponere*, *act.* *pono*—*ad*, *con*, *de*, *dis*, *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *re*, *se*, *trans*.

14 *Ipse (ego) æger ago capellas protenüs*:—*Ipse*, *pron.*:—*Æger*, *adj.*:—*Ago*, *act.*:—*Capellas*, *nn.*:—*Protenüs*, *adv.* *Ago* in composition changes *a* into *i* in the present, &c., but not in the preterperfect. *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *ex*, *per*, *pro*, *re*, *sub*, *trans*; as *abïgo*, *adïgo*, &c.

15 *Cadebat ut vellem*:—*Cadebat*, *neut.* *cado*:—*Ut*, *conj.*:—*Vellem*, *irr.* *volo*. *Cado* has these prepositions—*ad*, *con*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, *ob*, *re*. The *a* is changed into *i* short; as *adëdo* or *accëdo*, *concëdo*, &c.

16 *Jeci fundamenta pacis*:—*Jeci*, *act.* *jacio*:—*Fundamenta*, *nn.*:—*Pacis*, *nn.* *Jacio* when combined with these prepositions *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *inter*, *ob*, *pro*, *sub*, *trans*, changes the *a* into *e*.



## CHAP. IX.—The GENDER of NOUNS.

### GENERAL RULES.

THE names of males, &c. Valpy—*Propria quæ maribus*, &c. Eton.

#### EXAMPLES TO ILLUSTRATE THE GENERAL RULES.

1 Jovis arbore. Apollinis urbes.	Ov.
2 Aristides, Lysimachi filius.	Nep.
3 Aristomachen sororem Dionis.	Nep.
4 Cultum Dianæ. Cupidinis irâ.	Ov.
5 Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa.	Nep.
6 Domum Chersonesi. Corintho colonos.	Nep.
7 Flumen Rhodanum.	Cæs.
8 Strymonis undam. Frondibus ulmi.	Virg.
9 Myrtus hastilibus.	Virg.
10 Insula Britannia.	Cæs.
11 Nihil doli. Opus auxilio.	Nep.

#### QUESTIONS TO GENERAL RULES.

What gender are the names of heathen gods? of men? of rivers?

What is the gender of the names of goddesses? of females? of regions? of the common names of trees?

What gender are nouns indeclinable, and those ending in *um*?

THE PARSING TABLE TO PROVE THE GENDER OF NOUNS, in addition to what is named of the gender in table, page 13.

— is the—gender, because it—by the general rule or by the—special rule, or by an exception to the —) which says,

Example 1. *Apollinis* is a noun of the third declension, because the g. ends in *is*, declined like *Lapis*, in the singular number, genitive case. I decline it, singular nom. *hic Apollo*, g. *hujus Apollinis*, it is the masculine gender, because it is the name of a god, by the general rule which says, *Propria quæ maribus tribuuntur, mascula dicas; ut sunt Divorum, Apollo.*

When the pupil can, with ease, go through with words according to the preceding Example, he may omit some particulars: thus—

Example 2. *Irâ* a noun, s. nom. *hæc ira*; g. *hujus iræ*.—*Nomen non crescens*, &c.—d. *huic iræ*: ac. *hanc iram*: v. *ô ira*: ab. *ab hac irâ*.—*Irâ* is the ab. case.

Example 3. Gender of an adjective; *Pari*, adj. s. nom. *hic, hæc, hoc par*:—*Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem, ut felix, audax; retinent genus omne sub unâ*.—g. *hujus paris*: d. *huic pari*; ac. *hunc et hanc parem, hoc par*; ab. *ab hoc, hac, hoc pare vel pari*.—*Pari* is the ab. case.

Example 4. *Mali*, adj. s. nom. *Malus, mala, malum*.—*At si tres variant voces; sacer ut, sacra, sacrum, vox prima est mas, altera fœmîna, tertia neutrum*.—g. *mali, malæ, malî*.—*Mali* is g. s. n.

1 *Arbore from the tree Jovis of Jupiter; or from the oak*:—*Arbore*, ab. s. *arbor*, ôris, f. 3:—*Jovis*, g. s. *Jupiter*, g. *Jovis*, d. *Jovi*, &c. m. 3. *Urbes the cities Apollinis of Apollo, the god of music*:—*Urbes*, ac. pl. *urbs*, is, f. 3:—*Apollinis*, g. s. *Apollo*, înis, m. 3.

2 *Aristides Aristides, a noble Athenian, filius the son, Lysimachi of Lysimachus, a Macedonian*:—*Aristides*, nom. s. *Aristides*, is, m. 3:—*Filius*, nom. s. *filius*, i, m. 2:—*Lysimachi*, g. s. *Lysimachus*, i. m. 2.

3 *Aristomachen Aristomache the wife of Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse, sororem the sister Dionis of Dion a Syracusan*:—*Aristomachen*, ac. s. *Aristomache*, es, f. 1, declined like *Epitôme*. See Eton Notes under *musa*:—*Sororem*, ac. s. *soror*, ôris, f. 3:—*Dionis*, g. s. *Dion*, ônis, m. 3.

4 *Cultum the worship Dianæ of Diana, the goddess of hunting*:—*Cultum*, ac. s. *cultus*, ûs, m. 4:—*Dianæ*, g. s. *Diana*, æ, f. 1. *Irâ by the anger Cupidinis of Cupid, the god of love*:—*Irâ*, ab. s. *ira*, æ, f. 1:—*Cupidinis*, g. s. *Cupîdo*, înis, m. 3.

5 *Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa a celebrated Roman general*:—*Marcus*, nom. s. *Marcus*, i, m. 2:—*Vipsanius*, i, m. 2:—*Agrippa*, æ, m. 1.

6 *Domum home Chersonesi, at Chersonesus, a peninsula near the sea of Marmôra*:—*Domum*, ac. s. *domus*, i, vel ûs, f. 2 vel 4:—*Chersonesi*, g. s. *Chersonesus*, i, f. 2. *Colonos husbandmen Corintho from Corinth, a famous city of Greece*:—*Colonos*, ac. pl. *colonus*, i, m. 2:—*Corintho*, ab. s. *Corinthus*, i, f. 2.

7 *Flumen the river Rhodanum Rhone, a river in France*:—*Flumen*, ac. s. *flumen*, înis, n. 3:—*Rhodanum*, ac. s. *Rhodanus*, i, m. 2.

8 *Undam the water Strymonis of Strymon, a river in Macedonia*:—*Undam*, ac. s. *unda*, æ, f. 1:—*Strymonis*, g. s. *Strymon*, ônis, m. 3. *Ulmi the elms frondibus with leaves*:—*Ulmi*, nom. pl. *ulmus*, i, f. 2:—*Frondibus*, ab. pl. *frons*, dis, f. 3.

9 *Myrtus the myrtle hastilibus for spears*:—*Myrtus*, nom. s. *myrtus*, i, f. 2:—*Hastilibus*, ab. pl. *hastile*, is, n. 3.

10 *Insula the island Britannia Britain*:—*Insula*, æ, f. 1:—*Britannia*, æ, f. 1.

11 *Nihil nothing doli of deceit, or no deceit*:—*Nihil* an indeclinable noun:—*Doli*, g. s. *dolus*, i, m. 2. *Opus need auxilio of assistance*:—*Opus*, an indeclinable noun:—*Auxilio*, ab. s. *auxilium*, i, n. 2.

## OF THE SPECIAL RULES.

If the gender of a noun cannot be discovered by the general rules, recourse must be had to the special.

There are three special rules, which should first be perfectly learned. They may be illustrated by proving the gender of every noun coming under the three special rules, and arranged under the regular nouns of the first and third declensions in page 13 and 17.

In parsing the words in these lessons, almost the sole attention should be given to the gender: the general and special rules will then be soon understood.

While the pupil is learning the exceptions to each special rule, the words arranged under that declension, most adapted to illustrate what the pupil is learning in his Grammar, may be construed again, and the gender of every word proved: for instance, while the pupil is learning the exceptions to the first special rule he may read the irregular nouns of the first declension, and give the rule for the gender of every word (for many of these are irregular in gender as well as in declension), and both regular and irregular nouns of the second, third, and fourth declensions. The same plan may be followed, with the exceptions to the second and third special rules, by reading the nouns arranged under the third declension.

Which are called general rules? When the general rules will not show the gender of a noun, how is it discovered? How many special rules are there? What do you mean by a noun not increasing? What by a noun increasing, long or short? Which is the penultimate syllable? Does *mons*, -ontis increase *long* or short? How do you know the *o* is long? To what special rule does it belong? Why? If *mons*, -ontis belong to the third special rule, why is it *masculine*?

## CHAP. X.—Of the Preterperfect Tenses and Supines of Verbs.

THE regular rules for forming the preterperfect tenses and supines of verbs in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, should be first learned and illustrated, by construing the regular verbs in the conjugation under consideration. Then the rules in the third conjugation, and illustrated in the same manner.

The irregular verbs in each conjugation may be construed, while the pupil is learning the exceptions in the Grammar. Every word must be carefully parsed, and the rules for the preterperfect tense and supine always required.

To exemplify the rules for the preterperfect tenses and supines of compound verbs, some of those in page 71 combined with prepositions may be taken.

For Passive Verbs, the words arranged under the first, second, third, and fourth conjugations and deponents may be construed and parsed.

What should be first learned? Are not the rules for the third conjugation to be learned after the first, second, and fourth, because they are not so regular? When you perfectly understand regular verbs, do you not proceed to the irregular?

What do you read and parse to illustrate the formation of the preterperfect tense, &c. of compound verbs? What to show the formation of verbs passive?

### ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING TABLE FOR THE PRETERPERFECT TENSES AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

Name the conjugation.—Decline to the preter.—Give rule for preter.—Decline to supine.—Give rule.—Then finish the verb.

Example 1. *Saltābas*, a verb of the first conjugation; *Salto*, *saltas*, *sultāvi*.—As in *præsenti perfectum format in avi*: ut, *saltās*, *saltāvi*.—*Saltāre*, *saltandi*, *saltandum*, *saltātum*. *Vi fit tui*, ut, *saltāvī*, *saltātum*.—*Saltātu*, *saltans*, *saltatūrus*, to dance.—*Saltābas* is the ind. preterim. 2 s.

Example 2. *Lavābo*, a verb of the first conjugation; *Lavo*, *lavas*, *lavi*.—As in *præsenti perfectum format in avi*: ut, *no*, *nas*, *navi*; *vocito*,



*voctas, vocitāvi. Deme lavo lavi. — Lavāre, lavandi, lavando, lavandum, lotum vel lautum, lavātum. — Vi fit tum : ut flavi flatum ; pari excipe pastum ; dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum, atque lavātum : Lotu, lautu, lavātu, lavans, lotūrus, lautūrus, lavatūrus to wash. — Lavābo is the ind. fut. 1 s.*

Example 3. *Celātur* is a verb passive of the first conjugation : *Celor, celāris vel celāre, celātus sum vel fui* : — Verba in -or admittunt ex posteriore supino præteritum, verso -u per -us, et sum consociāto, vel fui : ut a *celātu, celātus sum vel fui* ; — *Celāri, celātus, celandus, to be concealed. Celātur* is in the ind. pr. 3 s.

## SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is the proper arrangement of words in a sentence : it consists of two parts,

1st. Concord.

2nd. Government.

1. Concord is when one word agrees with another in case, gender, number, or person.\*

2. Government is when one word requires another to be in a particular case or mood.

What is Syntax? How is it divided? What is Concord? What is Government?

\* While the pupil is going through the concords he should write the exercise on the concords from the Eton *Exemplu Minōra*, Dr. Valpy's First Exercises, Turner's, Clarke's, Whittaker's, Howard's, or any other useful Latin Exercises. Mr. Tocquot has published a Key to Clarke's and Turner's Exercises, called the Latin Scholar's Guide. Messrs. Whittaker and Howard have also published Keys to their Latin Exercises.

## CHAP. I.—*The CONCORDS.*

THERE are three ConCORDS.

1st. Between the Nominative Case and Verb.

2d. Between the Substantive and Adjective.

3d. Between the Relative and Antecedent.

In every concord there is a word agreeing, and the word with which it agrees. Let this be remembered in all the concords.

To agree in number and person, is to be of the same number and person. When the nominative case is singular, the verb should be singular; and when the nominative is plural, the verb should be plural. When the nominative case is the first person, the verb should be the first person; and when the nominative case is the second person, the verb should also be the second person.

To agree in number, case, and gender, is, at all times, to have the adjective, pronoun, or participle, of the same number, case, and gender, as its noun.

How many concords are there? What are they?

What is there in every concord? What is it to agree in number and person? What is it to agree in number, case, and gender?

## THE FIRST CONCORD.

The first concord is between the nominative case and the verb.

A verb agrees with its nominative case, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 58. *Verbum personāle*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 85. Ruddiman's Grammar, Rule 2. Valpy's Grammar, p. 80.

Filii discunt. *Cic. The sons learn.*

*Note.* This concord may be illustrated by construing again some of the examples in Etymology from p. 41 to p. 64, and by adding to the preceding directions for etymological parsing the following table.

## SYNTACTICAL PARSING TABLE.

Parse the words as in the Tables in Etymology, then add—

— agrees with its nominative case in number and person : rule—

Example 1. *Discunt*, a verb of the *third* conjugation ; *disco*, *discis*, *didici*.—*Sco fit vi : ut pasco, pavi, vult posco, poposci, vult didici, disco.*—*Discere, discendi, discendo, discendum.*—No supine :—*Hæc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum : lambo, mico, micui, rudo, scabo, parco, peperi, dispesco, posco, disco.*—*Discens*, to learn.—*Discunt* is in the ind. pr. 3. pl. and agrees with its nominative case *filii*.—*Verbum personāle*, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS, &amp;c.\*

Sometimes an infinitive, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 59.—*Aliquando oratio*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 86.—Many nominative cases singular, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 59.—*Verba, infinitivi modi*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 86.—*Nominativus pronominum*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 85. Ruddiman's Grammar, Rule 2, note 4. Valpy's Grammar, p. 80.

What is the first concord? What do you mean by saying a verb agrees, &c.? Which is the nominative case? What is its number and person? Which is the verb agreeing with it? Is not a sentence or an infinitive mood sometimes the nominative case to the verb? Is the nominative case of a pronoun generally expressed?

---

\* Before these observations are entered upon, the pupil might go through the three concords; and when these are generally understood, the observations will not perplex him.

- 1 Pulchritūdo mundi, ordo rerum cælestium, conversio  
solis, lunæ, sidērūmque omnium, indicant sat̄s as-  
pectu ipso ea omnia nōn esse fortuīta. *Cic.*
- 2 Piētas erga parentes est fundamentum virtūtum om-  
nium. *Cic.*
- 3 Sperāvi meliūs, quia me meruisse putāvi. *Or.*
- 4 ——— Furor irāque mentem  
Præcipitant. *Virg.*
- 5 Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes homīnes vehe-  
mentissimè permōvent. *Cic.*
- 6 Esse oportet ut vivas, nōn vivēre ut edas. *Cic.*
- 7 Anīmum vincēre, iracundiam cohibēre, præclārum  
est. *Cic.*
- 8 Hæc nequē ego nequē tu fecimus. *Ter.*
- 9 Contentum esse rebus suis maxīmæ sunt certissimæ-  
que divitiæ. *Cic.*
- 10 Parcè gaudēre oportet, et sensim queri ;  
Totam quia vitam miscet dolor et gaudium. *Phæd.*
- 11 Debēmur mortī nōs nostrāque. *Hor.*

Is the first *i* in *vehementissimè*, Example 5, long or short? Why?

Is the second *i* in *iracundiam*, Example 7, long or short? Why?

Which is the word agreeing? the word with which it agrees?

ORDER, &c.\*

1 Pulchritūdo mun'di, or'do cæles'tium re'rum, conver'sio so'lis,  
lu'næ, que om'nium sid'erum, ip'so aspec'tu at first sight sa'tis in'dicant  
ea om'nia, non es'se fortu'ita.

2 Pi'etas er'ga paren'tes est fundamen'tum om'nium virtu'tum.

3 Spera'vi me'lius (from be'ne) qui'a puta'vi me that I meruis'se  
(it).

4 Fu'ror que i'ra præcip'itant men'tem.

5 Vi'ta, mors, divit'ia, pauper'tas, vehementis'sime per'movent  
om'nes hom'ines.

6 Opor'tet (te) es'se (from e'do) ut vi'vas, non viv'ere ut e'das.

7 Vin'cere an'imum, cohibe're iracun'diam, præcla'rum est.

8 Ne'que e'go ne'que tu se'cimur hæc.

9 Max'imæ que certis'simæ divit'ia sunt es'se conten'tum re'bus  
su'is.

10 Opor'tet (te) gaude're par'ce, et que'ri sen'sim sparingly; qui'a  
do'lor (mis'cet) et gau'dium mis'cet to'tam vi'tam.

11 Nos quē nos'tra debe'mur are subject mor'ti.

\* This is accented according to the Rules in pages 10 and 11.



## THE SECOND CONCORD.

The second concord is between the substantive and adjective.

An adjective, whether it be, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 59.  
—*Adjectiva participia*, Eton Grammar, p. 86. Valpy's, p. 81. Ruddiman's, Rule 1.

Perpetui imperii. *Nep.* Bona pars hominum. *Hor.*

*Note.* For examples, let the adjectives from p. 29 to p. 34, and the participles, p. 65, be again construed, and to the parsing of an adjective, page 74, Examples 3 and 4, let the following table be added.

## SYNTACTICAL PARSING TABLE FOR AN ADJECTIVE.

— agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case: rule.—

*Example.* *Perpetui*, adj. s. nom. *Perpetuus*, *perpetua*, *perpetuum*.—*At si tres variant voces; sacer ut, sacra, sacrum, vox prima est mas, altera fœmīna, tertia neutrum.*—g. *Perpetui, perpetuæ, perpetui*.—*Perpetui*, is g. s. n. to agree with its substantive *imperii*—*Adjectiva participia, &c.*

## OBSERVATIONS, &amp;c.

The masculine gender is more worthy, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 60. Valpy's, p. 80.—Many substantives singular, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 60. Valpy's, p. 82.—When in English the word *thing*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 60. Valpy's, p. 82. Ruddiman's, Rule 1, note 2.—The word *man* joined with an adjective is omitted, and the adjective is put in the masculine. Valpy's, p. 82.

What is the second concord? What do you mean by agreeing in number, case, and gender? Which is the most worthy gender? What gender is the adjective when the word *thing* is understood? What when *man*?

- 1 Vulgāre amīci nomen, sed rara est fides. *Phæd.*
- 2 Quid stultius, quàm incerta pro certis habēre, falsa  
pro veris? *Cic.*
- 3 Rari boni. *Juv.* Sum felix. *Ov.*
- 4 ————— Labor omnia vicit  
Impröbus. *Virg.*
- 5 Sapiens est sempèr beātus. *Cic.*
- 6 ————— Video meliōra, probōque ;  
Deteriōra sequor. *Ov.*
- 7 Nisi utīle est quod faciūmus, stulta est gloria. *Phæd.*
- 8 Inops, potentem dūm vult imitāri, perit. *Phæd.*
- 9 Difficīle est propriè communia dicere. *Hor.*
- 10 Durum ! sed levius fit patientiā  
Quicquid corrigere est nefas. *Hor.*
- 11 Impii apud infēros pœnas luent. *Cic.*
- 12 Temeritas et ignavia sempèr turbulentæ sunt. *Cic.*
- 13 Divitiæ, bona valetūdo, potentia, honōres, sunt ca-  
dūca et incerta. *Cic. Amic.*
- 14 Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt. *Ter.*

*Which is the word agreeing? the word with which it agrees?*

#### ORDER, &c.

- 1 No'men ami'ci (est) vulga're, sed fi'des *sincerity* est ra'ra.
- 2 Quid stul'tius, quam habe're *to account* incer'ta pro cer'tis, fal'sa  
pro ve'ris?
- 3 Bo'ni (hom'ines) (sunt) ra'ri. Sum fe'lix.
- 4 Im'prob<sup>us</sup> *great* la'bor vi'cit om'nia.
- 5 Sa'piens (ho'mo) est sem'per bea'tus (ho'mo).
- 6 Vi'deo melio'ra que pro'bo, se'quor deterio'ra.
- 7 Ni'si quod fa'cimus est u'tile, glo'ria *boasting* est stul'ta.
- 8 I'nops (ho'mo) pe'rit dum vult imita'ri poten'tem.
- 9 Est diffi'cile di'cere pro'prie commu'nia.
- 10 Du'rum *It is hard*, sed quic'quid est ne'fas corrig'ere fit le'vius  
patien'tia.
- 11 Im'pii (hom'ines) lu'ent pœ'nas *shall suffer punishment* a'pud  
in'feros *with those below or in Hell*.
- 12 Tem'eritas et igna'via sem'per sunt turbulen'tæ.
- 13 Divit'ia, bo'na valetu'do, poten'tia, hono'res, sunt cadu'ca et  
incer'ta.
- 14 Pa'ter mi'hi *my father* et ma'ter sunt mor'tui.

## THE THIRD CONCORD.

The third Concord is between the antecedent and the relative.\*

The relative agrees with, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 60. Valpy's, p. 83.—*Relativum cum antecedente*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 87. Ruddiman's Grammar, Rule 6.

I Leve fit, quod benè fertur, onus. Ov.

*Note.* More Examples may be found in Etymology, p. 35: these must be construed, and to what is said of the parsing of pronouns in Etymology, you add the directions in the following table.

### SYNTACTICAL PARSING TABLE FOR THE RELATIVE.

— is a relative, &c. and agrees with its antecedent—in gender, number, and person, or with—understood after it in number, case, and gender: the rule is—.

*Example.* *Quod* is a relative, *nom. s. n.* and agrees with its antecedent *onus* in gender, number, and person, or with *onus* understood after it in number, case, and gender: the rule is, *Relativum cum*, &c. or *Adjectiva participia*, &c.

### OBSERVATIONS, &c.

An infinitive mood or, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 59.—*Aliquando oratio*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 87.—*Si nominativus relativo*, &c. Eton Grammar, p. 88. Valpy's, p. 84. Ruddiman's, Rule 7.

What is the third concord? How does the relative agree with its antecedent? How, with the word understood after the relative? Is this like the second concord?

---

\* This concord would be easily understood, if the pupil would remember that "the relative always agrees in gender, number, and case with the substantive understood after it." Let the pupil at all times be taught to supply the substantive, and then this concord is nothing but the second repeated; for the relative is always the same number, case, and gender as the supplied substantive *Litæra quas* (*litæras* understood) *dedi*. Cic. The letter which (letter) I gave. *Vulnus quod* (*vulnus* understood) *feci*. Mart. The wound which (wound) I made.

- 2 Est genus quoddam hominum, quod Helōtes vocātur, quorum magna multitūdo agros Lacedæmoniōrum colit, servōrūmque munēre fungitur. *Nep.*
- 3 Habent insidias hominis blanditiæ mali, Quas vitēmus. *Phæd.*
- 4 Nihil est malum, nisi quod turpe, et vitiōsum est. *Cic.*
- 5 Non semp̄er ea sunt, quæ videntur; decipit Frons prima multos. *Phæd.*
- 6 Vince. anīmos iramque tuam, qui cætēra vincis. *Ov.*
- 7 ————— Acceptissīma semp̄er Munēra sunt, auctor quæ pretiōsa facit. *Ov.*
- 8 Verum mihi dici volo, qui mendācem odi. *Plaut.*
- 9 Illud animal prædītum ratiōne, quem vocāmus homīnem. *Cic.*
- 10 Cui paras divitias? et cujus causā labōras? *Cic. Am.*
- 11 Esto contentus rebus suis, quod proprium est divitiarum. *Cic.*
- 12 Seipsum noscēre quod ut difficillīmum est, ita utilis-simum. *Cic.*

*Which is the word agreeing? the word with which it agrees?*

#### ORDER, &c.

- 1 O'nus quod (o'nus) be'ne fer'tur (*from feror*) fit le've.
- 2 Est *there is* quod'dam ge'nus homīnum quod (*ge'nus*) voca'tur Helo'tes a *Helot* or *Spartan slave* (Helotes, æ, m. l.) quo'rum (*gen'erum*) mag'na multitu'do co'lit ag'ros Lacedæmonio'rum, que fun'gitur mu'nere servo'rum.
- 3 Blandit'ia ma'li hom'inis ha'bent insid'ias, quas (*insid'ias*) vi-te'mus.
- 4 Ni'hil est ma'lum (*negot'ium*) ni'si quod (*negot'ium*) est tur'pe et vitio'sum.
- 5 Ea (*negot'ia*) non sunt sem'per, quæ (*negot'ia*) viden'tur; Pri'ma frons de'cipit mul'tos (*hom'ines*).
- 6 (*Tu*) Qui *you who* vin'cis cæt'era (*negot'ia*) vin'ce an'imos (*your dispositions*) que tu'am i'ram.
- 7 Sunt *they are* sem'per acceptis'sima mu'nera quæ (*mu'nera*) auc'tor fa'cit pretio'sa.
- 8 Vo'lo ve'rum di'ci mi'hi (*ego understood in mi'hi*) qui o'di men-da'cem.
- 9 Il'lud an'imal (est) prædītum ratio'ne, quem (*hom'inem meaning animal*) voca'mus hom'inem.
- 10 Cui (*hom'ini*) pa'ras divit'ias? et (pro) cau'sa *for the sake* cu'jus (*hom'inis*) labo'ras?
- 11 Es'to conten'tus su'is re'bus, quod est prop'rium divitia'rum.
- 12 Nos'cere seip'sum quod *which* ut *as* est difficil'limum ita (est) utilis'simum.



## CHAP. II.—OF GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT is when one word requires another to be in a particular case or mood.

In every sentence where there is government, the two points which require the pupil's attention are the word *governing* and the word or words *governed*.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF NOUNS.

*Quum duo substantīva, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 88. Valpy's, p. 85. Ruddiman's, Rules 11 and 12.—*Adjectivum in neutro, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 88. Valpy's, p. 86. Ruddiman's, Rule 13.

1 Anīmi homīnum sunt immortāles. Cic.

2 Plus habet opēris quā̄m ostentatiōnis. Quin.

*Note.* To what is said in the Etymological parsing must be added the following

#### SYNTACTICAL PARSING TABLE FOR GOVERNMENT.

— is a — case, mood, &c. governed by —, the rule is —.

*Example.* *Homīnum*, a noun, s. nom. *hic et hæc homo*; g. *hujus homīnis*.—*Commūnis genēris sunt ista*; *vigil, pugil, exul, præsul, homo*.—d. *huic homīni*: ac. *hunc et hanc homīnem*: v. *ô homo*: ab. *ab hoc et hâc homīne*: pl. nom. *hi et hæc homīnes*: g. *horum et harum homīnum*.—*Homīnum* is g. pl. governed by the substantive *anīmi*.—*Quum duo substantīva, &c.*

What is government? Which are the two points to be noticed? What is the case of the latter substantive? What case does an adjective in the neuter gender require? What case do *opus, usus, &c.* require? Which is the word governing? Which is the word governed?

#### ORDER, &c.

1 An'imi hom'inum sunt immorta'les.

2 Ha'bet it has plus op'eri of toil quam ostentatio'nis.

- 3 Nil opus est bello. *Ov.*  
 4 Anīmi cultus quasi quidam humanitātis cibus. *Cic.*  
 5 Justitia est omnium domīna, et regīna virtūtum. *Cic.*  
 6 Ego ingrāti anīmi crimen horreo. *Cic.*  
 7 Nil opus est, dixit, certamīne, Romūlus, ullo. *Ov.*  
 8 Consuetudīnis magna vis est. *Cic. Tusc.*  
 9 — Formōsos sæpè invēni pessīmos,  
 Et turpi facie multos cognōvi optīmos. *Phæd.*  
 10 Habes somnum imagīnem mortis; eamque quotidie  
 induis. *Cic.*  
 11 Plus esse in uno sæpè quàm in turbâ boni  
 — tradam. *Phæd.*  
 12 Ubi rerum testimonia adsunt, quid opus est verbis? *Cic.*

*Which is the word governing? Which is the word governed?*

#### ORDER, &c.

- 3 Est *there is* nil o'pus bel'lo.  
 4 Cul'tus an'imi (est) qua'si qui'dam ci'bus humanita'tis of human  
*nature.*  
 5 Justit'ia est dom'ina et regi'na om'nium virtu'tum.  
 6 E'go hor'reo cri'men ingra'ti an'imi.  
 7 Rom'ulus dix'it, Est nil o'pus ul'lo certam'ine.  
 8 Vis consuetu'dinis est mag'na.  
 9 Sæ'pe inve'ni formō'sos (es'se) pes'simos, et cogno'vi mul'tos  
 tur'pi fa'cie (es'se) op'timos.  
 10 Ha'bes som'num imag'inem mor'tis; que quotid'ie in'duis e'am.  
 11 Tra'dam *I can deliver or affirm* es'se that *there is* sæ'pe plus bo'ni  
 in u'no (hom'ine) quam in tur'bâ.  
 12 U'bi testimo'nia re'rum ad'sunt, quid est o'pus ver'bis?

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

## THE GENITIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

*Adjectiva quæ desiderium, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 89. Valpy's, p. 89. Ruddiman's, Rule 14.—*Nomina partitiva, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 90. Valpy's, p. 88. Ruddiman's, Rule 15.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 Omnes odērunt immemōres beneficii.           | Cic.  |
| 2 Nescia mens homīnum fati, sortisque futūræ.  | Virg. |
| 3 Nemo nostrū est sine culpā.                  | Sen.  |
| 4 Indus est omnium flumīnum maxīmus.           | Cic.  |
| 5 Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.      | Or.   |
| 6 Elephantō belluārum nulla prudentior.        | Cic.  |
| 7 Minīma malōrum eligenda sunt.                | Cic.  |
| 8 Omnium rerum mors est extrēmum.              | Cic.  |
| 9 Velocissīmus omnium animalium est delphīnus. | Plin. |
| 10 Est natūra homīnis novitātis avida.         | Or.   |
| 11 Nōn ignāra mali, misēris succurrere disco.  | Virg. |

What case do adjectives govern which signify desire, knowledge, fear, &c.? Adjectives denoting a part, or comparative and superlative? Interrogation and the answer? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Om'nes ode'runt immem'ores benefi'cii.
- 2 Mens hom'inum (est) nes'cia fa'ti que futu'ræ sor'tis.
- 3 Ne'mo nos'trū est si'ne cul'pā.
- 4 In'dus est max'imus om'nium flum'inum.
- 5 Mens con'scia rec'ti ri'det menda'cia fa'mæ.
- 6 Nul'la bellua'rum (est) pruden'tior elephan'to.
- 7 Min'ima malo'rum eligen'da sunt.
- 8 Mors est extre'mum om'nium re'rum.
- 9 Delphi'nus est (an'imal) velocis'simum om'nium anima'lium.
- 10 Natu'ra hom'inis est av'ida novita'tis.
- 11 Non (sum) igna'ra ma'li, (et) dis'co succur'rere mis'eris.

## THE DATIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

*Adjectīva quibus, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 91. Valpy's, p. 91. Ruddiman's, Rule 16 and 17.

- 1 Magnæ perīclo sunt opes obnoxīæ. *Phæd.*
- 2 — Si sum tibi cara, cavēto. *Ov.*
- 3 Utilius homīni nihil est quàm rectè loqui. *Phæd.*
- 4 Nòn mihi grata dies: noctes vigilantur amāræ:  
Nec tener in misēro pectōre somnus adest. *Ov.*
- 5 Universis Atheniensibus meritò Attīcus erat carissī-  
mus. *Nep.*
- 6 Urticæ proxīma sæpè rosa est. *Ov.*
- 7 Nihil mortalibus arduum est. *Hor.*
- 8 Homīnes hominibus maxīmè utiles esse possunt. *Cic.*
- 9 Morti nihil est tàm simīle quàm somnus. *Cic.*

What case do adjectives require that signify an advantage, disadvantage, &c.? Words compounded with *con*? Adjectives signifying likeness, &c.? *Natus*, *commōdus*, and adjectives in *bilis*? Which is the word governing? the word governed?

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Mag'næ o'pes sunt obnox'iaë perī'clo (*contracted for peric'ulo*).
- 2 Si sum ca'ra tib'i, cave'to *take care of yourself*.
- 3 Nī'hil est util'ius hom'ini quam lo'qui rec'te.
- 4 Dī'es non (est) gra'ta mī'hi: ama'ræ noc'tes vigilan'tur: Nec  
te'ner som'nus ad'est in mis'ero pec'tore.
- 5 At'ticus e'rat mer'ito caris'simus univer'sis Athenien'sibus.
- 6 Ro'sa est sæ'pe prox'ima urti'cæ.
- 7 Nī'hil est ar'duum mortal'ibus.
- 8 Hom'ines pos'sunt *may* es'se *be* max'ime u'tiles homin'ibus.
- 9 Nī'hil est tam sim'ile mor'ti quam som'nus.



## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE, &amp;c. AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

*Magnitudinis mensūra, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 92. Valpy's, p. 106. Ruddiman's, Rule 18.

- 1 Muri Babylōnis erant ducentos pedes alti, lati quinquagēnos. *Plin.*
- 2 Fossa sex cubitis alta, duodēcim lata. *Liv.*

## THE ABLATIVE CASE, &amp;c. AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

*Adjectiva, quæ ad, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 92. Valpy's, p. 103. Ruddiman's, Rules 19—21.—*Comparativa, cum, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 93. Valpy's, p. 99. Ruddiman's, p. 90.

- 3 Nōn est illa fortitūdo, quæ ratiōnis expers. *Cic.*
- 4 Quid est dulcius otio literāto? *Cic.*
- 5 Quid est ratiōne præstantius? *Cic.*
- 6 Nihil laudabilius, nihil magno et præclāro viro dignius, placabilitāte atque clementiā. *Cic.*
- 7 Quid est optabilius sapientiā? *Cic.*

In what case is the measure of space, distance, &c. put? What cases do adjectives require that signify *plenty, want, &c.*? words which signify the instrument, cause, &c.? What case do *dignus, indignus, &c.* govern? Which is the word governing? Which the word governed?

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Mu'ri Babylo'nis e'rant al'ti ducen'tos pe'des, la'ti quinquage'nos.
- 2 Fos'sa (fu'it) al'ta sex cu'bitis, la'ta duod'ecim.
- 3 Il'la non est fortitu'do, quæ (est) ex'pers ratio'nis.
- 4 Quid est dul'cius o'tio litera'to than literary leisure?
- 5 Quid est præstan'tius ratio'ne?
- 6 Ni'hil (est) laudabil'ius, ni'hil (est) dig'nus, mag'no et præcla'ro vi'ro, placabilita'te at'que clemen'tiā.
- 7 Quid est optabil'ius sapien'tiā?

8 Nihil est assuetudīne majus. *Ov.*

9 Nōn illo melior quisquam, nec amantior æqui  
Vir fuit, aut illā metuentior ulla Deōrum. *Ov.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

*Mei, tui, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 94. *Meus, tuus, &c.*  
Eton Grammar, p. 95.

10 Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui. *Ov.*

11 Bion dixit se omnia sua secum portāre. *Cic.*

12 Pater ejus Neōclus generōsus fuit. *Nep.*

13 Cœpisti melius quā desīnis; ultīma primis  
Cedunt: dissimīles hic vir, et ille puer. *Ov.*

14 Te tua, me delectant mea. *Cic.*

When are the genitive cases of primitive pronouns used? When the possessive *meus*, &c.? Which is the word governing? the word governed?

### ORDER, &c.

8 Ni'hil est ma'jus *more powerful* assuetu'dine *than use*.

9 Non fu'it quis'quam vir me'lior il'lo (Deucali'o'ne *than Deuca-*  
*lion*), nec aman'tior æ'qui, aut ul'la metuen'tior deo'rum il'lâ (Pyr'rhâ  
*Pyrrrha, the wife of Deucalion*).

10 Si (sit) cu'ra me'i tib'i, sit cu'ra tu'i tib'i.

11 Bi'on dix'it se porta're om'nia su'a se'cum.

12 Ne'oclus, pa'ter e'jus *of him, that is Themis'tocles*, fu'it gene-  
ro'sus.

13 Cœpis'ti me'lius quam des'inis; ul'tima ce'dunt pri'mis: hic  
vir et il'le pu'er (sunt) dissim'iles.

14 Tu'a (nego'tia delec'tant) te, me'a (nego'tia) delec'tant me.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

## THE NOMINATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

*Verba substantīva, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 95. Valpy's, p. 85. Ruddiman's, Rule 3.

- 1 Socrātes oracūlo sapientissīmus judicātus est. *Cic.*
- 2 Usus rerum est optīmus præceptor. *Cic.*
- 3 Pecuniam in loco negligēre, maxīum interdūm est  
lucrum. *Ter.*
- 4 Sapientiam qui expētunt, philosōphi nominantur:  
nec quidquam aliud est philosophia, si interpretārī  
velis, præter studium sapientiæ. *Cic.*

## THE GENITIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

*Sum genitīvum, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 96. Valpy's, p. 90. Ruddiman's, p. 91.—*Reminiscor, obliviscor, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 96.

*Note.* The cases governed by these verbs are best construed without any sign, as if they were in the accusative case.

What case will come after the verb *sum*, and verbs passive of calling? What case does *sum* require when signifying possession? Verbs of *accusing*, &c. require what case? *Satāgo, misereor, &c. ? Reminiscor, &c. ?* Do these verbs in construing admit of any sign after the dative or genitive case? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Soc'rates judica'tus est sapientis'simus orac'ulo.
- 2 U'sus re'rum est op'timus præcep'tor.
- 3 Neglig'ere pecu'niam in lo'co at a proper time est inter'dum max'imum lu'crum.
- 4 Qui ex'petunt sapien'tiam, nominan'tur philos'ophi: nec est philoso'phia quid'quam a'liud, si ve'lis interpreta'ri (e'am), præ'ter stu'dium sapien'tiæ.

5 *Proprium est stultitiæ aliōrum vitia cernēre, oblivisci suōrum.* *Cic.*

6 *Fortis et constantis anīmi est nōn perturbāri in rebus aspēris.*

7 ——— *Nec me meminisse pigēbit Elīsæ,  
Dūm memor ipse mei, dūm spirītus hos reget artus.* *Virg.*

8 *Nulla possessio pluris æstimanda est quā virtus.* *Cic.*

9 *Xantippe, Socrātis uxor, irārum et molestiārum per dies perque noctes satagēbat.* *Aul. Gel.*

#### THE DATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

*Omnia verba, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 98. Valpy's, p. 90—94. Ruddiman's, Rule 25—27.

1 *Os homīni sublīme dedit Deus — — —* *Ov.*

2 *Ægrōto dūm anīma est, spes est.* *Cic.*

3 ——— *Lusus anīmo debent aliquandō dari,  
Ad cogitandum melior ut redeat tibi.* *Phæd.*

What case do verbs of comparing, &c. govern? verbs of giving, &c.? of promising, &c.? Compounded with the adverbs *bene, satis, male*, and the prepositions *præ, ad, &c.*? Which is the word governing? the word governed?

#### ORDER, &c.

5 *Est proprium the property stultitiæ cernere vitia aliorum, oblivisci suorum.*

6 *Est it is the part fortis et constantis animi non perturbari in asperis rebus.*

7 *Nec pigebit me meminisse Elisæ, dum (e'go) ipse (e'ro) me'mor me'i, dum spirītus re'get hos ar'tus.*

8 *Nulla posses'sio æstimand'a est plu'ris quam vir'tus.*

9 *Xantip'pe, ux'or Soc'ratis, satage'bat ira'rum et molestia'rum per di'es que per noc'tes.*

1 *(De'us) de'dit sublīme os homīni.*

2 *Spes est dum anīma est ægro'to.*

3 *Lu'sus de'bent aliquan'do da'ri anīmo, ut re'deat me'lior tib'i ad cogitan'dum.*



- 4 Cedet profectò virtūti dolor, et anīmi inductiōne languescet. *Cic.*  
 5 Paucis temeritas est bono, multis malo. *Phæd.*  
 6 Est innocentia affectio talis anīmi, quæ noceat nemini. *Cic.*  
 7 Prima officia debentur Diis immortalibus, secunda patriæ, tertia parentibus, deinceps gradatim reliquis. *Cic.*  
 8 Tàm benè qui servit, serviat iste mihi. *Ov.*  
 9 Da vacuæ menti, quo teneātur, opus. *Ov.*  
 10 Atticus afflictis sempèr succurrit. *Nep.*  
 11 Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam. *Nep.*

#### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

*Verba transitiva, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 100. Valpy's, p. 94. Ruddiman's, Rule 28.

- 1 Homo doctus in se sempèr divitias habet. *Phæd.*  
 2 Vidēmus scintillūlas virtūtis in puëris. *Cic.*

Active verbs require what case? Verbs neuter, with a noun of a similar signification? Verbs of asking, teaching, &c.? Which is the word governing? the word or words governed?

Is *o* in *doctus* (Example 1) long or short? Why?

Is *i* before *a* in *divitias* (Example 1) long or short? Why?

Where is the accent in *doctus*, in *divitias*? Why?

#### ORDER, &c.

- 4 Do'lor ce'det profec'to virtu'ti, et langues'cet inductio'ne an'imi.  
 5 Teme'i'tas est bo'no pau'cis (est) ma'lo mul'tis.  
 6 Innocen'tia est ta'lis affec'tio an'imi, quæ no'ceat nem'ini.  
 7 Pri'ma offi'cia deben'tur immortal'ibus Di'is, secun'da (offi'cia) pa'triæ, ter'tia paren'tibus, dein'ceps rel'iquis grada'tim.  
 8 Qui ser'vit tam be'ne, is'te ser'viat mi'hi.  
 9 Da o'pus vac'uæ men'ti, quo tenea'tur *it may be engaged*.  
 10 At'ticus sem'per succu'rit afflic'tis.  
 11 Mo'res su'i fin'gunt fortu'nam cui'que.

1 Ho'mo doc'tus ha'bet sem'per divi'tias in se.

2 Vide'mus scintil'lulas virtu'tis in pu'ris.

3 Mentem hominis spectāto, nōn frontem. *Phæd.*

4 Sed prop̄era, nec te ventūras differ in horas :  
Qui nōn est hodiē, crās minūs aptus erit. *Ov.*

5 Qui se committit homīni tutandum imprōbo,  
Auxilia dūm requīrit, exitium invēnit. *Phæd.*

6 Si livor obtrectāre curam voluērit ;  
Nōn tamen eripiet laudis conscientiam. *Phæd.*

7 Romāni omnes reges suos Cæsāres Augustōsque cog-  
nominavēre. *Just.*

8 Conscia culpæ conspectum lucemque fugit. *Ov.*

9 Philosophia detrāhit solitudīnes, et pellit timōrem.  
*Cic.*

#### THE ABLATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

*Quodvis verbum, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 101. Valpy's, p. 97. Ruddiman's, Rule 55.—*Quibuslibet verbis, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 103. Valpy's, p. 97. Ruddiman's, Rule 65.

*Note.* Words in the ablative case governed by *fungor*, &c. are generally construed as the accusative, without any sign.

The cause, manner, &c. are put in what case after the verb? The price of things? Verbs of abounding, &c. require what case? What case is placed after *fungor*, *fruor*, &c.? Are they construed with the signs of the ablative case? A substantive with a participle depending on no other words, are put in what case? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

#### ORDER, &c.

3 Specta'to men'tem hom'inis, non fron'tem.

4 Sed prop̄era, nec (tu) differ te in ventu'ras ho'ras : Qui non est (ap'tus) hodi'e, e'rit mi'nus ap'tus cras.

5 Qui commit'tit se im'probo hom'ini tutan'dum *to be defended*, dum requi'rit auxil'ia, in'venit exit'ium.

6 Si li'vor volu'erit obtrecta're (me'am) cu'ram *my skill*, ta'men non erip'iet conscien'tiam lau'dis.

7 Roma'ni cognominave'runt or e're om'nes su'os re'ges Cæ'sares que Augus'tos.

8 Con'scia cul'pæ fu'git conspec'tum que lu'cem.

9 Philoso'phia de'trahit solicitu'dines, et pel'lit timo'rem.

- 1 Mors mea nè careat lachrymis. *En.*
- 2 Quod caret alternâ requie, durabile non est ;  
Hæc reparat vires, fessaque membra novat. *Ov.*
- 3 Cincinnatus, cæsis hostibus, liberavit exercitum. *Eut.*
- 4 Nequè unquam sine aliquâ lectione apud Atticum  
cenatum est, ut non minus animo, quam ventre,  
convivæ delectarentur. *Nep.*
- 5 Usus est Thrasybulus non minus prudentiâ quam for-  
titudine. *Nep.*
- 6 Concordiâ res parvæ crescunt, discordiâ maximæ di-  
labuntur. *Sal.*
- 7 Britanni utuntur aut ære, aut annulis ferreis ad cer-  
tum pondus examinâti, pro nummo. *Cæs.*
- 8 Sint procûl a nobis juvenes, ut fœmina, compti ;  
Fine colli modico forma virilis amat. *Ov.*
- 9 Este procûl lites, et amæræ prælia linguæ ;  
Dulcibus est verbis mollis alendus amor. *Ov.*
- 10 Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit. *Plin.*

*Which is the word governing? which the word governed?*

#### ORDER, &c.

- 1 *Ne let not me a mors ca'reat lach'rymis.*
- 2 *Quod ca'ret alter'nâ re'quie, non est durab'ile; hæc (re'quies) rep'arat vi'res, que no'vat fes'sa mem'bra.*
- 3 *Cincinna'tus, cæ'sis hos'tibus, libera'vit exer'citum.*
- 4 *Ne'que un'quam cœna'tum est (verb imper.) nor was there ever a supper a'pnd At'ticum, si'ne al'iqua lectio'ne, ut convi'væ delecta-ren'tur non mi'nus an'imo, quam ven'tre.*
- 5 *Thrasybu'lus u'sus est non mi'nus pruden'tiâ, quam fortitu'dine.*
- 6 *Res par'væ cres'cunt concor'diâ, max'imæ dilabun'tur discor'diâ.*
- 7 *Britan'ni aut utun'tur æ're, aut an'nulis fer'reis, examina'tis, ad cer'tum pon'dus, pro num'mo.*
- 8 *Juv'enes let young men comp'ti, ut fœ'mina, sint be pro'cul a no'bis: viri'lis for'ma a'mat col'li mod'ico fi'ne.*
- 9 *Li'tes quarrels es'te be ye pro'cul, et præ'lia ama'ræ lin'guæ: mol'lis a'mor alen'dus est dul'cibus ver'bis.*
- 10 *Isoc'rates ven'didit u'nam oratio'nem vigin'ti talen'tis.*

## VERBS PASSIVE.

*Passivis additur, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 104. Valpy's, p. 105.

- 1 Nihil rectè fieri potest ab irāto. *Cic.*
- 2 Boni viri res nunquā a Deo negligentur. *Cic.*
- 3 Anīmis tenduntur insidiæ a voluptāte. *Cic.*

## VERBS OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Verbis quibusdam, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 104. Valpy's, p. 109. Ruddiman's, Rule 44.

- 4 Solent mendāces luere pœnas malefici. *Phæd.*
- 5 Anīmus debet imperāre, corpus verò servīre. *Sal.*
- 6 In quatuor partes Honestum divīdi solet; prudentiam, justitiam, fortitudīnem et temperantiam. *Cic.*
- 7 Ut ager, quamvis fertilis, sine culturā fructuosus esse nōn potest; sic sine doctrīnā anīmus. *Cic.*
- 8 Usus attāmen exemplo multa docere potest. *Ob.*
- 9 ——— Possunt, quia posse videntur. *Virg.*
- 10 Ficta omnia celeritèr, tanquam flosculi, decidunt, nec simulātum potest quidquam esse diuturnum. *Cic.*

What case do verbs passive govern, when followed in English by the preposition *by*? When two verbs come together, in what mood is the latter placed? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Nihil potest fieri recte ab irato (homine).
- 2 Res boni viri nunquam negligentur a Deo.
- 3 Insidiæ tenduntur are laid anīmis for souls a voluptate.
- 4 Mendaces solent luere pœnas malefici.
- 5 Anīmus debet imperare, verò corpus servīre.
- 6 Honestum solet divīdi in quatuor partes, (in) prudentiam, justitiam, fortitudīnem et temperantiam.
- 7 Ut ager, quamvis fertilis, non potest esse fructuosus sine culturā, sic anīmus (non potest esse fructuosus) sine doctrīnā.
- 8 Attamen usus potest docere multa exemplo.
- 9 Possunt, they are able, quia videntur posse.
- 10 Omnia ficta all feigned or pretended things celeriter decidunt, tanquam flosculi blossoms, nec quidquam simulātum potest esse diuturnum.



## GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

*Gerundia et supīna, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 105. Valpy's, p. 111. Ruddiman's, Rule 45—54.

- 1 Definītur iracundia, ulciscendi libīdo. *Cic.*
- 2 Occurrunt anīmo pereundi mille figūræ ;  
Morsque minūs pœnæ, quàm mora mortis, habet. *Ov.*
- 3 Difficīle erat intellectu, utrum Attīcum amīci magis  
vererentur, an amārent. *Nep.*
- 4 ——— Superanda omnis fortūna ferendo est. *Virg.*
- 5 ————— Immedicabīle vulnus  
Ense recidendum ; nè pars sincēra trahātur. *Ov.*
- 6 Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. *Juv.*
- 7 Difficīle dictu est, quantopērè conciliet anīmos homī-  
num comītas affabilītāsque sermōnis. *Cic.*
- 8 Nulli nocendum ; si quis vero læsērit,  
Mulctandum simīli jure — — — *Phæd.*

What cases do gerunds and supines govern? What is the construction of the gerund in *di*? The gerund in *do*, and *dum*? How are *must* and *ought* rendered in Latin? When is the active supine used instead of the infinitive mood? When is the passive supine used? Which is the word governing? the word governed?

Is the *o* long or short in *mortis*, Example 2? Why?

In the same Example, is the second *e* in *pereundi* long or short? Why? Where is the accent in *mortis*? where in *pereundi*? Why?

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Iracun'dia defini'tur (es'se) libi'do ulciscen'di.
- 2 Mil'le figu'ræ pereun'di occur'runt an'imo ; que mors ha'bet mi'nus pœnæ quam mo'ra mor'tis.
- 3 E'rat it was diffi'cile intellec'tu, u'trum ami'ci ma'gis vereren'tur At'ticum, an ama'rent.
- 4 Om'nis fortu'na superan'da est feren'do.
- 5 Immedicab'ile vul'nus reciden'dum (est) en'se ; ne since'ra pars traha'tur.
- 6 Oran'dum est (no'bis) ut sa'na mens sit in sa'no cor'pore.
- 7 Est diffi'cile dic'tu, quantop'ere com'itas que affabil'itas sermo'nis concil'iet an'imos hom'inum.
- 8 Nocen'dum (est) nul'li we must do no injury to any òne ; ve'ro si quis læ'serit (il'lum), mulctan'dum (es'se) sim'ili ju're.

## NOUNS OF TIME AND PLACE.

*Quæ significant, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 106. Valpy's, p. 107. Ruddiman's Rule 56—63.

*Omne verbum, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 107. Valpy's, p. 108. Ruddiman's, Rule 55.

1 Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est. *Cic.*

2 Condiunt Ægypti mortuos, et eos domi servant. *Cic.*

3 Meditare, quæso, dies et noctes. *Cic.*

4 Athēnis adversus ingratos actio constituta fuit. *Val. Max.*

5 Fanum Neptūni est Tænari, quod violari nefas putant Græci. *Nep.*

6 Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Cic.*

7 Sardinia abest ab Africâ ducenta millia passuum. *Plin.*

8 Accēpi Româ fasciculum literarum. *Cic.*

Part of time is put in what case? Duration of time requires what case? Names of what places are put in the genitive case? Of what in the ablative? Motion to a place? Motion from a place? Which is the word governing? the word or words governed?

## ORDER, &amp;c.

1 Pla'to mor'tuus est scri'bens u'no et octoges'imo an'no.

2 Ægyp'ti con'diunt mor'tuos, et ser'vant e'os do'mi.

3 Medita're quæ'so (per) di'es et noc'tes.

4 Athe'nis at Athens ac'tio constitu'ta fu'it adver'sus ingra'tos.

5 Fa'num Neptu'ni est Tænari, quod Græ'ci pu'tant ne'fas a crime viola'ri.

6 Dionys'ius tyran'nus, expul'sus Syracu'sis, doce'bat pu'eros Corin'thi.

7 Sardin'ia ab'est ab Africâ ducen'ta mil'lia pas'suum.

8 Acce'pi fascic'ulum litera'rum Ro'mâ.

## VERBS IMPERSONAL.

*Impersonalia nominativum, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 108. Valpy's, p. 101. Ruddiman's, Rule 39—43.

- |                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Ex malis minīma oportet eligēre. | <i>Cic.</i>   |
| 2 Peccāre licet nemīni.            | <i>Cic.</i>   |
| 3 Decet te vera prolōqui.          | <i>Plaut.</i> |

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES.

*Participia regunt, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 109. Ruddiman's, Rule 45.

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 4 Ut oculus, sic animus, sese nōn videns, alia cernit.    | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 5 Curandum est ut appetitus ratiōni obedientes præbeamus. | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 6 Virtus est amans sui.                                   | <i>Cic.</i> |
| 7 Deus effūgit oculos, visendus est cogitatiōne.          | <i>Cic.</i> |

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

*En et ecce, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 110. Valpy's, p. 113. Ruddiman's, Rule 66.

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 8 E'n misēræ mihi.                      | <i>Ter.</i>   |
| 9 Vivēre natūræ convenientēr oportet.   | <i>Hor.</i>   |
| 10 Sāt fautōrum habet, qui rectē facit. | <i>Plaut.</i> |

What do you observe of verbs impersonal? What case does *interest, &c.* govern? Which verbs govern a dative case? What cases do participles govern? What case does the adverb *en, &c.* govern? Do some adverbs govern the same cases as the words from which they are derived? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

## ORDER, &amp;c.

- 1 Opor'tet (te) elig'ere min'ima ex ma'lis.
- 2 Li'cet nem'ini pecca're.
- 3 De'cet te pro'loqui ve'ra.
- 4 Ut oc'ulus (non vi'dens se'se) cer'nit a'lia, sic an'imus non vi'dens se'se (cer'nit a'lia).
- 5 Curand'um est ut præbea'mus appeti'tus obediē'tes ratio'ni.
- 6 Vir'tus est a'mans su'i.
- 7 De'us ef'fugit oc'ulos, visen'dus est cogitatio'ne.
- 8 En mis'erae mi'hi.
- 9 Opor'tet (nos) viv'ere convenien'ter natu'ræ.
- 10 Ha'bet sat fauto'rum, qui fa'cit rec'te.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

*Conjunctiōnes copulatīvæ, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 111. Valpy's, p. 115—117. Ruddiman's, Rule 75 and 76.

- 1 Corpus vas est, aut aliquid animi receptaculum. *Cic.*
- 2 Cumque minus firmum nil sit, quam ventus et unda,  
In ventis et aqua spes mea semper erit? *Or.*
- 3 ——— Probitas laudatur, et alget. *Juv.*
- 4 Omne animal id agit, ut seipsum conservet. *Cic.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

*Prepositio subaudita, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 113. Valpy's, p. 114 and 115. Ruddiman's, Rule 68—72.

- 5 Homo constat corpore et animâ. *Cic.*
- 6 Amicitia nullo loco excluditur. *Cic.*
- 7 Docemur auctoritate legum coercere cupiditates,  
nostra tueri, ab alienis mentes, oculos, manus abstinere. *Cic.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

*O, exclamantis, &c.* Eton Grammar, p. 115. Valpy's, p. 118. Ruddiman's, Rule 73.

- 8 O faustum et felicem diem! *Ter.*
- 9 O vitæ philosophia dux! O virtutis indagatrix, expultrixque vitiorum! quid omnino vita hominum sine te esse potuisset? tu urbes peperisti; tu dissipatos homines in societatem vitæ convocasti. *Cic.*

What is the office of conjunctions? Do they require verbs to be in particular moods? What do you observe of prepositions? What cases do interjections govern? *Which is the word governing? the word governed?*

ORDER, &c.

- 1 Cor'pus est vas, aut aliquid receptaculum ani'mi.
- 2 Cum'que nil sit mi'nus fir'mum, quam ven'tus et un'da, me'a spes *shall my hope* e'rit *be* sem'per in ven'tis et a'quâ?
- 3 Prob'itas lauda'tur, et al'get.
- 4 Om'ne ani'mal a'git id, ut conser'vet seip'sum.
- 5 Ho'mo con'stat (in) cor'pore et ani'mâ.
- 6 Amicit'ia exclud'itur nul'lo lo'co.
- 7 Doce'mur auctorita'te le'gum coërce're cupidita'tes, tue'ri nos'tra (bo'na) *our own property*, abstinere men'tes, oc'ulos, ma'nus ab alie'nis (bo'nis).
- 8 O faus'tum et feli'cem di'em!
- 9 O philoso'phia dux vi'tæ! O indaga'trix virtu'tis que expul'trix vitio'rum; quid potuis'set vi'ta hom'inum es'se omni'no si'ne te? tu peperis'ti ur'bes; tu convocâs'ti (for convocavis'ti) dissipa'tos hom'ines in societa'tem vi'tæ.



## OF ELLIPSIS.

The following observations may be useful.

1. Every nominative case has a verb expressed or understood, and every verb has a nominative.

Quis est in scholâ? Præceptor (*est*). (*Ille*) decipit multos.

2. Every adjective agrees with some substantive, expressed or understood; as,

Mortâlis (*homo*), Octōber (*mensis*), Oriens et occidens (*sol*), Meum est (*officium*), Omnia (*negotia*), Intērest mea (*officia, negotia, or opēra*).

Vendidit equum minīmo (*pretio*).

3. Every relative has a noun understood after it, with which it agrees in number, case, and gender.

Est Deus qui (*Deus*) gubernat mundum. Quod (*negotium*) est honestum (*negotium*) id utīle est.

4. Every genitive case is governed by another substantive expressed or understood; as,

Paulūlum (*negotium*) pecuniæ. Avidus (*de re, de causâ, or de gratiâ*) gloriæ. Unus, alter, humanissimus (*ex numero*) sapientum. Est (*officium*) adolescentis. Me (*pretio*) pili æstimat. Accūsāt eum (*de crimīne*) furti. Fidei (*verba*) reminiscitur. Quid (*in urbe*) Romæ faciam?

5. Every accusative case is governed by a verb, participle, or preposition, expressed or understood; as,

Liber valet (*ad*) sex solīdos. Redit (*ad*) domum. Petrus currit (*cursum*). Rogo patrem (*ut daret mihi*) pecuniam. Induit (*in*) se calceos.

6. Every ablative case is governed by a preposition expressed or understood; as,

Frigidior (*præ*) glacie. Discessit (*a*) Româ.

Vir (*cum or de*) nullâ fide. Plenus (*cum*) vino. Georgius regnat Dei (*a*) gratiâ. Nemo sapit (*in*) omnibus horis.

Does every nominative case belong to a verb? Has every verb a nominative case? Give some examples. Does every adjective belong to a substantive? With what does the relative agree? Can you explain it? By what is every genitive case governed? Is every accusative case governed by a verb, participle, or preposition? Give some examples. By what is every ablative case governed?

## RULES FOR CONSTRUING, &c.

A sentence is the expression of a thought.

Sentences are divided into simple and compound.

A simple sentence has in it but one nominative case, and one finite verb, either expressed or understood ; as,

Fugit tempus.—*Virg. Time flies.*

If the verb be active, the sentence must not only have a nominative case, and a finite verb, but an accusative case ; as,

Omnia vincit amor. *Virg.*  
*Love overcomes all things.*

### RULES FOR CONSTRUING SIMPLE SENTENCES.

**Rule 1.** First take the nominative case ; afterwards the verb ; and then the case governed by the verb.

**Rule 2.** Take the adjective or participle before the word with which it agrees, except when the adjective or participle governs some following word, then the adjective or participle is construed after the noun.

**Rule 3.** A genitive case is taken immediately after the noun or word by which it is governed.

**Rule 4.** The adverb must not be construed with a noun, but with the verb, participle, or adjective.

**Rule 5.** The infinitive mood is generally taken after another verb.

**Rule 6.** When several cases come after the verb, take the nominative or accusative case first, then the genitive, dative, or ablative.

**Rule 7.** After a preposition, look for an ablative or accusative case.

The seven preceding rules for construing simple sentences are easily reduced to this

### GENERAL RULE.

Some interjections, adverbs, &c. such as *heu, quum, jam*, &c. may be first taken.

*The nominative*, with its adjective or pronoun, must then be construed.

After the nominative, must be taken the genitive case governed by the nominative, and to that genitive case must be added every word agreeing with it.

*The verb* must be construed after the nominative and its dependents.

The adverb, or word restraining or increasing the sense, must be taken after the verb : or,

Next after the verb may come another verb of the infinitive mood.

*The cases which the verb governs* may be taken after the verb, first the nominative or accusative, then the genitive, dative, or ablative.

After the cases governed by the verb, may follow the preposition and its noun, with every word depending on it.

#### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence has more than one nominative case, or one finite verb either expressed or understood ; or it consists of two or more simple sentences, connected by relatives or conjunctions ; as,

*Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedāmus amōri.* *Virg.*

*Love overcomes all things, and we can give way to love.*

*Omnes se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cæruleum efficit colōrem.* *Cæs.*

*All the Britons stain themselves with woad, which makes them of a blue colour.*

#### RULES FOR CONSTRUING COMPOUND SENTENCES.

*Rule 1.* Generally take every word in a clause, and *always* every word in a member on which you enter, before you begin another, observing all the preceding rules respecting a simple sentence, as you construe each clause in succession.

*Rule 2.* First take the nominative case or cases, afterwards the verb or verbs, and then the cases governed by the verb.

*Rule 3.* All words signifying the same thing, or put in

apposition, and those which answer to each other, such as *Talis—qualis*; *Tantus—quantus*; *Sic—ut*; and *Tam—quam*; must be construed as near together as possible.

*Rule 4.* The relative, in all its cases, must be construed as soon as possible after the antecedent.

*Rule 5.* A clause is frequently inserted within another, explaining some part of it. The inserted clause must be construed as near as possible to that part of the sentence which it illustrates, and according to the rules for simple sentences.

The rules for construing a compound sentence are reduced to the following

#### GENERAL RULE.

*First take the vocative cases, with some interjections and adverbs.*

Then the nominative cases, and words in apposition, with the relative, or other inserted clause depending on the nominative case.

*Then the verb or verbs, with adverbs, infinitive moods, &c.*

*After the verb, the words governed by it, and the words in apposition, with the relative or other inserted clauses depending on the word governed by the verb, preposition, &c.*

\* \* \* *These rules are fully illustrated by examples in “LATIN CONSTRUING,” which is intended to follow this INTRODUCTION.*

THE END.



LATELY PUBLISHED BY

W. SIMPKIN AND R. MARSHALL,  
STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE-STREET;

AND MAY BE HAD OF ALL BOOKSELLERS.

---

## ANGLO-SAXON.

By the Rev. J. BOSWORTH, M.A. F.A.S. F.R.S.L.

HONORARY MEMBER OF THE COPENHAGEN SOCIETY FOR  
ANCIENT LITERATURE OF THE NORTH, ALSO HONORARY  
MEMBER OF THE LONDON PHILOMATHIC INSTITUTION,

*And Vicar of Little Horwood, Bucks.*

---

THE ELEMENTS OF ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR,  
with Notes illustrating the Structure of the Saxon, and  
the Formation of the English Language; and a Gram-  
matical Praxis, with a literal English Version: to which  
are prefixed, Remarks on the History and Use of the  
Anglo-Saxon, and an Introduction on the Origin and  
Progress of Alphabetic Writing, with Critical Remarks  
by the Rev. CHARLES O'CONOR, D.D., and exemplified  
by Engravings of Inscriptions and Fac-similes of Saxon  
and other Ancient Manuscripts. Price in boards, 16s.  
Large Paper, 20s.

*These are a few of the Testimonials given of this Grammar.*

"This work will prove a most valuable acquisition to the library of the philologer and antiquary. The Introduction, on the Origin and Progress of Alphabetic Writing displays considerable learning and ability."—*Gentleman's Magazine*.

"The Philosophical Introduction discourses much and well about the Origin of Alphabetic Writing.—This excellent Grammar is not only the completest view of the Anglo-Saxon language which we

have seen, but is also ornamented with curious speculative philosophy concerning topics of philology, and many parts of it may be read with amusement and instruction by persons who are not ambitious of acquiring the language, the rules of which it is destined to record."—*Monthly Review*.

"In the valuable work before us, Mr. Bosworth has stated so many motives to induce us to pursue this branch of literature, that we feel more than ever interested in the originals and history of our Saxon ancestors.

"If, indeed, heretofore we felt discouraged by the supposition that our progenitors were nothing better than a horde of savages, or wandering Scythians, who waged war with civilization, science, and Christianity; or if we fancied that their language had neither attractions nor merit; or if we found a difficulty in procuring assistance for learning their language, and references to authors who wrote in the Saxon tongue: now, indeed, we can no longer complain that any thing has been omitted in order both to obviate prejudice, and remove difficulty.

"The plates which accompany and illustrate the work we have introduced into the present Number of the *Classical Journal*, not merely because we regard them as bearing testimony to the labour and pains which Mr. Bosworth has taken in illustrating the Anglo-Saxon language, and facilitating the acquirement of it; but with a hope that they may attract the attention of the public to his masterly work, which we expect, when more extensively circulated, will render Saxon literature a subject of as general interest as it deserves to be.

"Respecting the originals of our Saxon ancestors, Mr. Bosworth affords us the most interesting information."

*Classical Journal*, No. 61, vol. 31, p. 121.

"If the reader is desirous to become acquainted with the original structure of the English tongue, or to possess a work resulting from deep penetration, and a thorough knowledge of ancient literature, he will find in Mr. Bosworth more than the writer can describe.

"This work is a real treasure: it is not the result of mere speculative opinion, but of strict attention to the principles of Saxon literature, and a thorough knowledge of the subject. It is built of solid materials, founded on a firm basis, and polished by the erudition of a scholar, the research of an antiquary, the elegance and ingenuity of a man of taste and talent, and the sound reasoning of a philosopher. The reader will be pleased to understand that Mr. Bosworth does not confine himself to an examination of the Saxon tongue, but has much useful matter relative to the origin and progress of writing the Hebrew, Gothic, and other ancient languages, and above all, the formation of the English. He has not contented himself with a compilation from the works of his predecessors, but has ransacked the stores of literature, and weighed them in the scales of justice. His *Praxes* are both instructive and entertaining, and especially his *Analysis of the Saxon Poets*, and his *Quotations from the works of Alfred the Great*, which carry the reader un-

awares from the busy pursuits of the present age, backward through the hustle of a thousand years, and almost persuade him that he is a Saxon.—Some persons may, perhaps, regard these words as hyperbolical; but such have not read the Grammar itself, the intrinsic value of which is such that a gentleman's library cannot be complete without it.”—*Martin's Philological Gr.*

“The Anglo-Saxon Grammar is a Treatise of intrinsic merit, and of great learning.—The Engravings of Inscriptions and Fac-similes of Saxon and other Ancient Writings are beautiful—the Preface abounds with information, rich and varied—the Definitions, Rules, and Examples, are lucid and concise—the Notes judicious—and the Praxis truly excellent.”

*Edwards's Prometheus Chained, Greek and English.*

A COMPENDIOUS GRAMMAR of the PRIMITIVE ENGLISH, or ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE; a knowledge of which is essential to every modern English Grammarian, who would fully understand the true origin and idiom of his own Language, being chiefly a selection of what is most valuable and practical in the Elements of the Anglo-Saxon Grammar, with some additional observations. 8vo. Price 6s.

“We may conscientiously recommend the whole to the serious perusal of all who are desirous of having pointed out to them the means of improving their comprehension and mastery of the English Tongue. We understand, with pleasure, that the author has it in contemplation to edit a Saxon Dictionary. The work could not, we suspect, be in better hands.”—*Panoramic Miscellany.*

---

*Preparing for Publication,—By the same Author.*

1. A COMPENDIOUS ANGLO-SAXON DICTIONARY, with EXPLANATIONS IN ENGLISH. One large vol. 8vo.—This work is preparing with as much expedition as is consistent with correctness.
2. The ANGLO-SAXON GOSPELS.
3. ANGLO-SAXON READING; or, Extracts from the most important Saxon Works, being the original Saxon to the passages literally translated into English, and contained in the valuable History of the Anglo-Saxons by S. Turner, Esq., F.A.S. F.R.S.L.



*Lately published by Simpkin and Marshall.*

The PRACTICAL MEANS of REDUCING the POOR'S RATE, encouraging Virtue, and increasing the Comforts of the aged, afflicted, and deserving Poor, as well as repressing able-bodied Pauperism, by a proper application of the existing Laws, respecting Select Vestries and Incorporated Houses of Industry. By the Rev. J. BOSWORTH, M. A., &c. 8vo. Price 1s. 6d.

"In this well written pamphlet, a becoming deference is paid to the Legislature. We admire the modesty, which, with the clearest reasoning, and a detail of the most desirable practical results, does not advance a step without the sanction of the existing laws. We have, indeed, seldom seen so large and interesting a body of facts brought together, in so small a compass. The style is neat and perspicuous, and every one concerned in the management of the poor must derive information from reading this pamphlet, and be pleased with the good sense and feeling which pervade every part of it."

*Gentleman's Magazine for Dec. 1824.*

"We have never perused a pamphlet more replete with sound sense and practical information than the present. It is written with great perspicuity, and, from its useful and practical details, deserves the careful perusal of every one concerned in the management of the poor. There is nothing in it visionary: on the contrary, the whole is built on the solid basis of experience and facts. It does not treat of what may be, but what has been done: and many places are named where the Poor's Rate has been reduced to less than one fourth of its former amount, by a more efficient application of existing laws. Enough is here advanced to prove, that the oppressive burden of the Poor's Rate does not arise from a defect in the principle of the Poor's Laws, but from their partial, defective, and slovenly administration. The Ministers of Elizabeth's Augustan age were not such novices in legislation as to build upon an unsound foundation. They, in wisdom, equity, and humanity, made a provision for the actual wants of the "impotent, lame, and blind;" but, at the same time, they steadily withstood voluntary idleness and fictitious claims; hence, as Blackstone observes, 'when the number of indigent persons was greatly increased, by withdrawing the alms of the monasteries, a plan was formed, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, more humane and beneficial than even the feeding and clothing of millions, by affording them the means, with proper industry, to feed and clothe themselves. And the further any subsequent plans for maintaining the poor have departed from this institution, the more impracticable, and even pernicious, their visionary attempts have proved.'—*Critical Gazette, Sept. 1824.*



**LATIN CONSTRUING**; or, easy and progressive Lessons from Classical Authors; with Rules for translating Latin into English, designed to teach the Analysis of simple and compound sentences, and the method of construing Phædrus and Nepos, as well as the higher classics, without the help of an English translation; intended for the use of junior classes in schools, and of those who have not the advantage of regular instruction, for whom the quantity of those syllables, on which the pronunciation depends, is marked. To which is added, a full account of the Roman Calendar, with Rules for reducing the English to the Roman time, and the Roman to the English. By the Rev. J. BOSWORTH, M. A., &c. The Second Edition, 2s. 6d. bound.

It is the object of this little Work to point out to those who have a competent knowledge of Grammar, a general method of construing Latin, without the debilitating aid of English translations. When the nature of a sentence, and the order in which Latin words are arranged, have been fully explained, the pupil begins to construe the shortest sentence, and is gradually led forwards to sentences enlarged by simple words, till he comes to the most involved simple sentences. He is then introduced to compound sentences, and taught that they are enlarged by clauses, as simple sentences are by words. After attending to the rules in this little manual, illustrated as they are by copious examples from the easiest and best Roman classics, the pupil will have no difficulty in taking up any Latin author, and construing it with judgment and precision.

“The Rules for Latin Construing are plain and easy.”

*New Monthly Magazine.*

Also, **A CONCISE VIEW OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY**, with Biographical, Chronological, and Historical Notes, and seven neat Illustrative Maps: designed as an easy Introduction to Dr. Butler’s Sketch of Ancient Geography, with the proper names carefully accented to direct the pronunciation. By W. BOND, of Queen’s College, Cambridge. 12mo., 4s. 6d.

J. M'Creery, Took's Court,  
Chancery Lane, London.

LATIN CONSTRUING;  
OR,  
EASY AND PROGRESSIVE LESSONS  
FROM CLASSICAL AUTHORS;  
WITH  
RULES  
FOR TRANSLATING LATIN INTO ENGLISH:

Designed to teach the Analysis of Simple and Compound Sentences,  
And the Method of Construing PHÆDRUS, and NĒPOS, as well as the higher  
Classics, without the help of an English Translation;

INTENDED

For the use of Junior Classes in Schools, and of those who have not  
The advantage of Regular Instruction, for whom the Quantity of those Syllables  
On which the Pronunciation depends, is marked:

TO WHICH IS ADDED

*A Full Account of the Roman Calendar,*

WITH

*Rules for reducing the English to the Roman Time, and the Roman to  
the English.*

---

BY

THE REV. J. BOSWORTH, M. A. &c.,

VICAR OF LITTLE HORWOOD, BUCKS,

AUTHOR OF AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CONSTRUING, &c.

THE THIRD EDITION.

---

Quod enim munus reipublicæ majus melius ve afferre possumus, quam si  
docemus, atque erudimus juventutem? — Cic.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR W. SIMPKIN AND R. MARSHALL,

STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE STREET.

1829.

---

Entered at Stationers' Hall.

---

CHARLES WOOD AND SON, PRINTERS,  
Poppin's Court, Fleet Street.



## PREFACE.

---

THE following little Compilation was originally intended to have been published as a third part to "AN INTRODUCTION to Latin Construing;" but it has been printed in a separate form, under the title of "LATIN CONSTRUING," for the accommodation of those who wish to use the one without the other.

When a boy has made some progress in his Latin Grammar, it is customary for him to commence the reading of some easy Author. He generally begins to construe, without any previous knowledge of sentences, or the difference in the arrangement of Latin and English words; it, therefore, often happens, that a boy, who has learned Latin for some time, can scarcely construe the plainest sentence. He can frequently translate all the words separately; but he can make nothing of them when taken together. This difficulty arises from the peculiar collocation of Latin words in a sentence. Though this arrangement must have been familiar to Roman children, it is so foreign to our idiom, that a boy is generally confused, and sometimes quite bewildered by it. Would not this confusion in a great measure be removed, if

plain Rules, illustrated by copious examples, were given to reduce the Latin words into the English order? This is the object of the present compilation. It is intended, to point out to those who have a competent knowledge of Grammar, a general method of construing, before they take up a Latin author. No pretensions are made to offer Rules which will answer for the resolution of all sentences. The chief design is to teach young persons a general method of construing, and to show them the proper way of overcoming their difficulties.

Great care has been taken not to confuse by teaching many things at a time, or by anticipating succeeding Rules: therefore, after the nature of a sentence has been explained, the pupil begins to construe the shortest simple sentences, and is gradually led forward to those enlarged by single words, till he comes to the most involved simple sentences that could be easily found in authors generally read by those who are learning Latin.

The pupil is then introduced to Compound Sentences, and taught that compound sentences are enlarged by clauses, as simple sentences are by words. Is there not another advantage naturally resulting from the method here adopted? While the pupil is learning the arrangement of words in a simple, and clauses in a compound sentence, must he not also imperceptibly acquire the principles of Punctuation, and Composition?

When a boy perfectly understands the Rules in this book, he will be fully competent to enter upon

Eutropius\*, Nepos, Phædrus, Cæsar, Ovid, &c. without the aid of Translations. A boy who has construed every part of this little work, has been accustomed to analyze sentences taken from Phædrus, Nepos, and the higher Latin classics, and he will easily overcome any future obstacle. It is not said, he will meet with no difficulty: but it is affirmed, that a diligent use of his Dictionary and Grammar, with the application of the Rules in this little Manual, will soon enable a boy, of moderate parts, to construe his lessons with judgment and precision. It will, however, after all, require some mental exertion; but this is one of the most desirable consequences of learning Latin. It generates a habit of attention, and insensibly produces a patience of literary labour. In short, besides preparing men for particular spheres of action, it is well calculated to bring into exercise, and to enlarge all the faculties of the mind. It lays† a broad and strong basis, on which any kind of useful and ornamental superstructure may be afterwards raised.

As far as possible, such illustrative examples are chosen, as express some historical fact, or moral sentiment; while, therefore, the teacher, in his

---

\* The very correct Editions of Eutropius, Nepos, Phædrus, and Ovid, with English Notes, by the Rev. C. Bradley, are strongly recommended. There is also a cheap and very useful edition of Nepos, by Alex. Stewart, with short Notes, Index, &c. To those who are defective in quantity, or who have not much assistance, Mr. Stewart's Nepos is particularly recommended, as it has the quantity of the words marked to direct the pronunciation.

† Knox on Education, p. 9.

arduous task of instruction, will derive pleasure from meeting with some of the best sentiments of his old classical friends, the pupil will be benefited by having many moral and useful truths deeply impressed on his mind.

Probably a more full account of the Roman Calendar is here given, than will be found in other school books. It will, at least, enable the pupil to understand the dates he may meet with, in his subsequent reading. The Roman division of the day will be useful for ascertaining the time of any transaction. Questions are added to excite the attention, and to direct the pupil to those things most deserving his notice.

Originality is not to be expected in this little work, any more than in the Introduction to it. The Compiler is far more desirous to produce a short practical work to facilitate the labour of teachers, and the progress of learners, than one that would please the theoretical and visionary by its novelty. He has, therefore, freely taken whatever he found adapted to his purpose, from those who have written on the subject, but servilely copied none.



# PREFACE

TO

## THE THIRD EDITION.

---

IN the Introduction prefixed to this edition, an attempt has been made to explain the general manner of reading Latin in our Universities and public schools. They do not read Latin and Greek\* merely by quantity, but by accent. In dissyllables, the accent is always on the former syllable, whether it be long or short. Words of more than two syllables are also read by accent, but it is regulated by the quantity of the penultimate syllable, which, when doubtful, has the quantity carefully marked throughout this edition. No

---

\* Young persons, renewing their acquaintance with Greek, or learning it when advanced towards maturity, without much *vivâ voce* assistance, if desirous of knowing the general manner in which Greek is read in England, will find the valuable series of Greek Plays by T. W. C. EDWARDS, M.A. of the most essential service. This uniform edition of the Greek Drama, has the original Greek text very neatly and correctly printed from the best editions, with every facility that can be possibly desired by any student in Greek: the text is accompanied with a strictly literal English prose version, the scanning of each verse, the grammatical order of the words, with the English accentuation, and copious critical and explanatory notes. The same indefatigable gentleman is preparing an edition of Homer and other works on a similar plan.

more difficulty can therefore exist in reading, with propriety, the classical extracts in this little work, than there would have been if every word had been accented.

In this third edition the arrangement is more complete, and the whole is made much more easy. To accommodate those Tutors who teach in classes, the present arrangement will be retained in all future editions.

Vicarage, Little Horwood, Bucks,  
August 17, 1829.

# INTRODUCTORY REMARKS

## ON THE

### MANNER IN WHICH LATIN IS READ

#### IN OUR

#### UNIVERSITIES AND PUBLIC SCHOOLS.

---

### *On the Sound of the Letters in Latin.*

IN Latin the diphthongs æ and œ are sounded as *e* ; thus, *musæ* and *pœna* are pronounced *mu'-se* and *pe'-na*.

*C* is sounded, as in English, like *s*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ* ; and like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and consonants : thus, *cicer* is pronounced *si'-ser* ; *cæcus*, *se'-kus* ; *cœnaculum*, *se-nak'-u-lum* ; *cuticula*, *ku-tik'-u-la* ; and *classicus*, *klas'-si-kus*.

The letter *g* is also sounded as in English. It is hard, like *g* in *give*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and consonants ; and soft, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, or another *g* followed by *e* : thus, *gallus* is pronounced *gal'-lus* ; *gutta*, *gut'-ta* ; *gigno*, *jig'-no* ; *gemma*, *jem'-ma* ; *agger*, *aj'-jer*.

*Ch* is always sounded like *k* ; thus, *chronica* is pronounced *kron'-i-ca*.

---

How are the diphthongs æ and œ sounded ?

What is the sound of *c* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, &c. ? What before *a*, *o*, *u*, &c. ?

How is *g* sounded before *a*, *o*, *u*, &c. ? How before *e*, *i*, *y*, &c. ?

Like what letter is *ch* sounded ?

The syllables *ti*, *ci*, *si*, *xi*, before a vowel are pronounced as in the English words *nation*, *precious*, *invasion*, *noxious*; thus, *pretium*, *concio*, *incisio*, and *anxiè*, are pronounced *pre'-shi-um*, *con'-shi-o*, *in-cizh'-i-o*, *ank'-shi-e*: but *ti* at the beginning of a word, and after *s* or *x*, is pronounced like *ti* in *tidy* or *satiety*; as, *istius*, *mixtio*, and *timor*, pronounced *ist'-i-us*, *mix'-ti-o*, and *ti'-mor*.

### *The division of Words into Syllables.*

A Syllable is one distinct sound, and may be either a vowel, a diphthong, or one or more consonants with a vowel.

In Latin the final vowel is always distinctly sounded; indeed there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs: as, *difficillimè*, “*Hora quota est? Me misèrum!*” which words are divided and read *dif-fi-sil'-li-me*, *Ho'-ra kwo'-ta est? Me mis'-e-rum!* but when the letters *c*, *h*, *g*, *q*, or *s*, are followed by two vowels, they generally form only one syllable: as, *cui*, *huic*, *lingua*, *qua*, *qui*, *quo*, *suadeo*, divided and read *ki*, *hike*, *lin'-gwa*, *kwa*, *kwi*, *kwo*, *swa'-de-o*.

The following observations may be serviceable in dividing words into syllables.

How are *ti*, *ci*, &c. pronounced before a vowel? Give examples.

How is *ti* pronounced at the beginning of a word, and after *s*?

What is a syllable? Is the final syllable always pronounced in Latin? How do you pronounce *cui*, *lingua*, &c.?



1. A single consonant, between two vowels, must be joined to the latter vowel; as, *bo'-nus*, *a'-mo*, *ho'-mo*, &c.; except the accent falls on the last syllable but two (antepenult), then this syllable generally takes the following consonant; as, *ar-tif'-i-cem*, *Tar-quin'-i-us*, *po-pu-lab'-i-tur*, &c.; and *x* is joined to the vowel going before it; as, *ex'-ul*, *ax'-is*, &c. Compound words must also be resolved into their constituent parts; as, *ab'-est*, *in'-e-o*, &c.

2. Two consonants, between two vowels, are to be separated; as, *il'-le*, *an'-nus*: but, when the two consonants can begin a word, they may be sometimes joined to the following syllable; as, *e-bri'-e-tas*, *du-plic-a'-vit*.

### *General Rules for Quantity.*

1. One vowel before another, or before *h*, followed by a vowel, is short: as, *měus*, *nīhil*, &c.

2. The diphthongs *æ*, *æ*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, are all long: as, *hæ'-dus*, *poē-na*, &c.

3. A vowel before two consonants, or before *j*, *x*, and *z*, is long: as *fōrma*, *mājor*, &c.

Every penult not falling under these rules, is marked thus:

˘ over a vowel, shows that syllable to be short.

ˉ over a vowel, denotes that syllable to be long.

What is the first rule for dividing words into syllables? What is the second?

Is one vowel before another long or short? Is a diphthong long? Is a vowel, before two consonants, long or short? What is the mark for a short syllable? A long?

## *Rules for Accent* \*.

**RULE I.**—In pronouncing Latin words of two syllables, the accent or stress of the voice is always on the *former syllable*, whether it be long or short : as, *hū'-jus*, *hō'-rum*, *mū'-sa*, *bō'-nus*, *pā'-rens*, &c.

**RULE II.**—In words of three or more syllables, when the last syllable but one (penult) is *long*, *that syllable* has the accent : as, *ma-gīs'-ter*, *mu-sā'-rum*, *ma-gis-trō'-rum*, *do-mi-nō'-rum*, *vi-rūm'-que*, &c. : if the last syllable but one be *short*, the accent is on the *preceding* (antepenult) *syllable* : as, *dom'-i-nus*, *fil'-i-us*, *op'-ē-ris*, *o-per'-i-bus*, *me-li-or'-i-bus*, &c.

Latin is read by accent, which, in words of three or more syllables, is regulated by the quantity of the last syllable but one. When the quantity of the last syllable but one is known, either by the general rules, or by the mark over it, you may ascertain where to place the accent by the two preceding rules. The stress of

---

What is accent ? What is the mark for accent ? Where is the accent or stress of the voice in Latin words of two syllables ?

Where is the accent in words of three or more syllables ? Where when the last syllable but one is *short* ? Give an example. Which is the penult syllable ? Which the antepenult ? Where is the accent when the last syllable but one is *long* ? Give an example.

How is Latin read ? How do you know which syllable to accent ?

\* The teacher will observe, that accent is here used in its generally received acceptation, its original meaning may be seen in the "Elements of Anglo-Saxon Gr." p. 220, n. 8.

the voice is on the first syllable of *o'-pus*, *pro'-bat*, *ha'-bet*, *Ro'-mam*, *Ne'-ro*, *mo'-ra*, *vi'-res*, *po'-ma*, &c., because they are words of two syllables. The accent is on the antepenult or last syllable but two in *ar-tif'-ĭ-cem*, *ex-or'-dĭ-um*, *Tar-quin'-ĭ-us*, &c., because the penult or last syllable but one is short: it is on the penult or last syllable but one in *in-cĕn'-dit*, *du-pli-cā'-vit*, &c., because that syllable is long.

*Examples to illustrate the Rules for Accent,  
and the Division of Syllables.*

1. O'-pus ar-tif'-ĭ-cem pro'-bat.
2. Im-pe'-ri-um ha'-bet ex-ord'-i-um.
3. Ro'-mam in-cen'-dit Ne'-ro.
4. Mo'-ra dat vi'-res.
5. Tar-quin'-i-us nu'-mĕ-rum du-pli-cā'-vit.
6. Po'-ma dat au-tum'-nus.
7. Ma-te'-ri-em su-pe-rā'-bat o'-pus.
8. Rex bel'-lum ges'-sit.

---

Which syllable is accented in *opus*, *probat*, *Romam*, &c.? Why? Which in *artificem*, *imperium*, &c.? Why? Which in *duplicavit*, *incendit*, &c.? Why?

# INTRODUCTORY REMARKS

IN EXPLANATION OF

## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

---

A Sentence is the expression of a thought.

An assemblage of words, expressing a perfect thought, or making complete sense, and distinguished at the end by a period, or full-stop, marked thus (.), is called a Sentence, from the Latin word, *Sententia*, a thought.

When a question is asked, a note of Interrogation is used, marked thus (?) : as,

*Hora quota est ?*

*Hor.*

*What hour is it ?*

A note of Admiration, marked thus (!), is used when wonder, or some sudden passion, is excited : as,

*Me Misërum !*

*Ter.*

*Wretched me !*

Sentences are divided into Simple and Compound.

A simple sentence has in it but one nominative case,

---

What is a sentence ? What is put at the end of a sentence ?

Make a note of interrogation. When is it used ?

Make a note of admiration. When is it used ?

How are sentences divided ?



and one *finite*\* verb, either expressed or understood :  
as,

Fugit tempus. Virg.  
*Time flies.*

Cadunt umbræ. Virg.  
*The shadows fall.*

These are sentences, because they express perfect thoughts, or make complete sense.

If the verb be active, the sentence must not only have a nominative case, and finite verb, but an accusative ; because, without this accusative case, no complete sense would be communicated. If we say, *Obsequium parit*—*Complaisance procures* ; and *Amor vincit* — *Love overcomes* ; it is manifest the sentences are imperfect ; but if the accusative cases, *amicos*—*friends* ; and *omnia*—*all things*, be subjoined, they will be perfect sentences, because complete sense is conveyed : as,

Obsequium amīcos parit. Ter.  
*Complaisance procures friends.*

Studia solatium præbent. Cic.  
*Learning affords comfort.*

How many nominative cases and verbs may a simple sentence contain ?

If the verb be active, what must be added to the sentence ? Why ?

Is the *i* in *studia*, *solatium*, and *omnia*, long or short ? Why short ? Where is the accent in *studia*, *solatium*,

\* A finite verb is that to which number and person belong : a verb is called *finite*, to distinguish it from verbs of the *infinitive* mood.

Omnia vincit amor.

Virg.

*Love overcomes all things.*

Though a simple sentence can have but one nominative case, and one *finite* verb, it may contain a verb in the *infinitive* mood, with other words, and still continue a simple sentence : as,

Vir optĭmus difficillimè alios esse imprōbos suspicātur. Cic.

*A very good man hardly suspects others to be wicked.*

Heu, quàm difficile est crimen nōn prodere vultu ! Ov.

*Alas, how difficult it is not to betray a crime by the countenance !*

and *omnia* ? Why on *stu*, *la*, and *om* ? Where is the accent on *præbent*, *vincit*, and *amor* ? Why on *præ*, *vin*, and *a* ?

May not a verb of the infinitive mood, and other words, be added to a simple sentence ?

## CHAPTER I.

---

### THE ANALYSIS OR METHOD

OF

### CONSTRUING SIMPLE SENTENCES.

THE construction, or placing of Latin words in a sentence differs from the English. In our language, the words lie in direct\* order; but in Latin, the words to be first translated into English, are often found at some distance from the beginning of the sentence. You think the words are confusedly put together. They only appear so to you, who are unacquainted with the manner in which the Romans constructed their sentences.

---

Are Latin words placed in the same order in a sentence as the English? Where is the Latin word to be first taken often found?

---

\* In English, the words are arranged according to the order, in which the understanding directs those ideas to be exhibited to the view of another. The nominative case, or the subject of action, is placed first; the verb which denotes the action follows; and, after the verb, the object to which the verb refers: as, *Learning affords comfort*.

The understanding and imagination are the powers of the mind, which chiefly influence the arrangement of words in a sentence. We have seen, that the English adopt that grammatical arrangement which is dictated by the understanding. The Greeks and Romans, on the contrary, generally arranged their words according to the order in which they rose in the imagination. If a Greek or Roman had seen and desired a piece of money, and had expressed himself according to his immediate feelings, he would have first named the mone

In construing Latin, you have considerable difficulty in finding the order in which the words are to be taken. The following directions are given, with a desire to remove this difficulty, which will be greatly diminished if you bear in mind that the separated words, in a Latin sentence, are collected in a proper order for translating into English, by observing the words which depend upon each other, and taking those together which agree in termination.

When you have a sentence in Latin to construe, you should first read it carefully over, and notice the inflections, or endings of nouns, pronouns, and verbs. Every word, with which you are not perfectly acquainted, must then be looked out in the Dictionary. The general meaning of every word being ascertained, you will

---

What is a difficulty in construing Latin? How may it be overcome?

What should you do first, when you have a sentence in Latin to construe? What are you to notice?

---

which he desired. His mind would have been next carried to himself. The action, by which his desires must have been gratified, would finally have attracted his attention. He would have said, *Argentum mihi cedo*—Money me give. Though this arrangement prevailed in the Latin and Greek languages, this order was, in some degree, changed for the sake of harmony. Terence has the preceding sentence, *Mihi argentum cedo*. Phor. A. v, S. vii, l. 42. To this the termination, which shows the relation of words, though separated, gave great liberty, and enabled them to adopt that arrangement which contributed most to harmony, without destroying the sense. Without producing the least ambiguity, the Romans could say, *Darium vicit Alexander*—*Darium Alexander vicit*—*Alexander Darium vicit*—*Alexander vicit Darium*—*Vicit Alexander Darium*—or, *Vicit Darium Alexander*, for, *Alexander conquered Darius*. The Greeks and Romans, therefore, had a greater liberty than we have, in consulting the melody of their periods by the arrangement of words; but, if our language possess less harmony, it is more obvious and plain in its meaning.



easily discover the verb, as it always denotes *being*, *action*, or *passion*; or it may be known by its termination.

The nominative case to the verb is found by asking the question, “ *Who*, or *what*, with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb \* :” as,

Venit dies.

Virg.

After this sentence has been carefully read over, and the meaning of each word found in the Dictionary; if the verb have not been discovered at once by the termination, it will be known to be *venit*, as it signifies *to come*. To find the nominative case, you ask, *who* or *what* comes, and the answer is, *the day*; *dies*, *the day*, is, therefore, the nominative case. The sentence is then construed—*Dies*, *the day*; *venit*, *comes*.

When the verb is active, it will require an accusative case, which may be discovered by the termination; or rather, “ the substantive, which answereth to the question *whom* or *what*, made *by* the verb, shall commonly be the accusative case :” as †,

Opus artificem probat.

Phæd.

When this sentence has been carefully read over, and the signification of every word discovered; you will see

How do you discover the verb?

How do you find the nominative case to a verb?

How is the accusative case found?

\* See Eton Grammar, with Dr. Mavor's Notes, ninth edition, p. 59; Valpy, p. 80; and Ruddiman, p. 75.

† See Eton Grammar, p. 59.

that, *opus*, *the work*, is the nominative case, and *probat*, *proves*, is the verb. To find the accusative case, you say, *whom or what* does the work prove ; the answer is, *the workman* ; therefore, *artificem*, *the workman*, is the accusative case. The sentence is then construed — *Opus*, *the work* ; *probat*, *proves* ; *artificem*, *the workman*.

A general rule for construing a simple sentence is easily derived from the preceding observations.

---

## RULE I.

*First take the nominative case, and afterwards the verb.*

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. Venit dies.   | <i>Virg.</i>  |
| 2. Micat luna.   | <i>Hor.</i>   |
| 3. Homo sapit.   | <i>Plaut.</i> |
| 4. Anīmus valet. | <i>Sal.</i>   |
| 5. Crescit fama. | <i>Hor.</i>   |
- 

Give the example, and explain the method of construing it.

What do you take first? What afterwards?

*Which is the word agreeing? The word with which it agrees\*?*

What is the first rule for construing a simple sentence? Give the sense of it in your own words.

*Which is the nominative case? The verb?*

---

\* The questions in Italic should be applied to every example.

6. Cadunt umbræ.	<i>Virg.</i>
7. Frondent Silvæ.	<i>Virg.</i>
8. Viget ætas.	<i>Sal.</i>
9. Partūrit arbos.	<i>Virg.</i>
10. Corvus sedit.	<i>Eut.</i>
11. Culmīna fumant.	<i>Virg.</i>
12. Fugit tempus.	<i>Virg.</i>
13. Lex manet.	<i>Cic.</i>
14. Labitur ætas.	<i>Virg.</i>
15. Diligentia valet.	<i>Cic.</i>
16. Stetērunt comæ.	<i>Virg.</i>
17. Medicīna paratur.	<i>Ov.</i>
18. Mala convaluēre.	<i>Ov.</i>
19. Levatur hiems.	<i>Ov.</i>
20. Divitiæ sunt incertæ.	<i>Cic.</i>
21. Expetuntur divitiæ.	<i>Cic.</i>

18. *Mala* the evils, *convaluēre* for *convaluērunt*, from *convalesco*.

When the verb is active \* it will admit of various cases after it, hence Rule II.

---

\* An active may be distinguished from a neuter verb, thus : if the accusative case of a personal pronoun can be placed next after the verb, it is *active* ; if not, it is *neuter* : as, *Luna micat*, the moon shines ; you cannot place *me*, *him*, &c. after *shines*, and say ; *the moon shines me* ; *micat*, shines, is therefore a neuter verb : but you can say *opus probat*, the work proves *me*, *him*, &c. : *probat*, proves, is therefore an active verb.

## RULE II.

*First take the nominative case, afterwards the verb, and then the case governed by the verb.*

- |                                   |              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Opus artificem probat.         | <i>Phæd.</i> |
| 2. Imperium habet exordium.       | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 3. Romam incendit Nero.           | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 4. Mora dat vires.                | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 5. Tarquinius numerum duplicavit. | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 6. Poma dat autumnus.             | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 7. Materiem superabat opus.       | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 8. Rex bellum gessit.             | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 9. Formam populabitur ætas.       | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 10. Vocem præcludit metus.        | <i>Phæd.</i> |
| 11. Vocem misit religio.          | <i>Phæd.</i> |
| 12. Luna lumen præbet.            | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 13. Brutus patriam liberavit.     | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 14. Matrōnæ Brutum luxerunt.      | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 15. Sol duplicat umbras.          | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 16. Mora percõquit uvas.          | <i>Ov.</i>   |

2. *Imperium* an empire, *habet* has, *exordium* a beginning. 11. *Religio* conscience.

---

What is the second rule for construing a simple sentence?

*Which is the nominative case? The verb? The case governed by the verb?*



- |                                 |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|
| 17. Terra herbas nutrit.        | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 18. Experientia est magister.   | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 19. Ebrietas est insania.       | <i>Sen.</i>  |
| 20. Dux ego eram.               | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 21. Prudentia est senectūtis.   | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 22. Tu miserēre sorōris.        | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 23. Pompilius morbo decessit.   | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 24. Eurōpæ succubuit Asia.      | <i>Nep.</i>  |
| 25. Tu equo credīte.            | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 26. Auxilio tempus eget.        | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 27. Latīni pugnâ superāti sunt. | <i>Eut.</i>  |

21. *Prudentia*, prudence, *est*, is the property, *senectutis*, of old age. 22. *Tu miserēre*, vel *miserēris*, from *miserereor*, to pity: (*tuæ* understood) *sororis*, your sister. The cases governed by such verbs as *miserere*, Ex. 22, and *eget*, 26, are best construed without any sign, as if they were in the accusative. See "Introduction to Latin Construing," page 91.

NOTE 1.—If no nominative case be expressed, it is understood in the verb, and must be supplied by a *pronoun* of the *same number* and *person* as the verb.

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Multitudīnem recēpit. | <i>Eut.</i>  |
| 2. Capiunt arma.         | <i>Just.</i> |

1. *Ille* is the nominative understood to *recepit*. 2. *Illi* the nominative to *capiunt*.

---

How do you find the nominative case when it is not expressed? Of what number and person will it be?

3. Rem exposui.	<i>Cic.</i>
4. Revocāte anīmos.	<i>Virg.</i>
5. Urbem ampliāvit.	<i>Eut.</i>
6. Homo es.	<i>Just.</i>
7. Percontatōrem fugīto.	<i>Hor.</i>
8. Timōrem mittīte.	<i>Virg.</i>
9. Responsum dedit.	<i>Virg.</i>
10. Curam dimittīte.	<i>Ov.</i>
11. Consilia damus.	<i>Ter.</i>
12. Jubes me.	<i>Cic.</i>
13. Voluptāte capiuntur.	<i>Cic.</i>
14. Diem perdīdi.	<i>Eut.</i>
15. Expecta.	<i>Ter.</i>
16. Sapit.	<i>Plaut.</i>
17. Adsum.	<i>Ter.</i>

3. *Ego* to *exposui*. 15. *Expecta*, wait thou, or wait.  
 16. *Sapit*, he is wise. 17. *Adsum*, I am here, or I am present.

NOTE 2.—The neuter verb *sum* is frequently understood in all its inflections: in construing it must be supplied.

1. Tempus edax.	<i>Ov.</i>
2. Mens corpore.	<i>Sal.</i>

1. *Est* is understood after *tempus*. 2. *Est* is understood after *mens*.

---

What verb is frequently understood?

3. Usus præceptor.	<i>Cic.</i>
4. Ego Davus.	<i>Ter.</i>
5. Stylus magister.	<i>Cic.</i>
6. Imperātor animus.	<i>Sal.</i>
7. Ebrietas insania.	<i>Sen.</i>
8. Medicīna ars.	<i>Cic.</i>
9. Tarquinius Rex.	<i>Eut.</i>
10. Nupta soror.	<i>Eut.</i>
11. Decepta aviditas.	<i>Phæd.</i>
12. Pars decepta.	<i>Hor.</i>

4. *Davus*, a sly servant, and character in Terence. 9. *Fuit* is understood. 10. *Soror*, the sister, *nupta* (*fuisse*). 11. *Aviditas* (*fuit*) *decepta*.

A genitive case, whether placed before or after the verb, must depend upon some other word.

### RULE III.

*A genitive case is taken immediately after the noun, or word by which it is governed.*

The genitive case is generally governed by that word nearest to which it stands.

1. Gener Tarquini collēgit exercitum. *Eut.*
2. Usus rerum est præceptor. *Cic.*

---

On what does a genitive case depend? Where is it construed?

*Which is the genitive case? The word by which it is governed?*

3. Pars hominum decepta cupidine. *Hor.*
4. Dignitas tribunorum perseveravit. *Eut.*
5. Populus Romæ tribunos creavit. *Eut.*
6. Matrônæ defensorem pudicitiae luxerunt.  
*Eut.*
7. Fundamentum est justitiæ fides. *Cic.*
8. Rerum vicissitudo est. *Ter.*
9. Scientia est pabulum animæ. *Cic.*
10. Honor est præmium virtutis. *Cic.*
11. Iræ remedium dilatio est. *Sen.*
12. Injuriarum remedium est oblivio. *P. Syr.*
13. Atticus tulit pietatis fructum. *Nep.*
14. Cultura animi philosophia esta. *Cic.*
15. Societatis vinculum est ratio. *Cic.*
16. Medicina est ars valetudinis. *Cic.*
17. Imperator vitæ mortalium animus est.  
*Sal.*
18. Dux Romanorum cep̄erat Volscorum ci-  
vitatem. *Eut.*
19. Philosophorum vita commentatio mortis  
est. *Cic.*

3. *Decepta (est) cupidine*, with desire, from *cupīd-o*,  
inis. 8. *Est*, there is, *vicissitudo*.

The nominative case, as well as the case governed by the verb, may have its nature or quality specified by an adjective. The following Rule will show where the



adjective is to be construed, whether it be placed before or after the verb.

## RULE IV.

*Take the adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle before the word with which it agrees; except when the adjective or participle governs some following word, then that adjective or participle is construed after the noun.*

When you meet with an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, you look through the sentence for a noun of the same number, case, and gender, and generally ending with the same letter, to which noun the adjective belongs: or you ask the question *who* or *what* \* with the adjective, and the answer is the substantive to the adjective. In the first example you say, Who or what *divine*? the answer is, *lex*, law; and, therefore, *lex* is the noun to which the adjective *divina* belongs.

1. Lex divīna manet.

*Cic.*

2. Labitur volatilis ætas.

*Ov.*

3. Venit summa dies.

*Virg.*

---

Where is the adjective construed? Is there any exception? What is it?

How do you find the substantive to the adjective? Give an example.

---

\* See Eton Grammar, p. 59.

4. Summa villārum culmīna fumant. *Virg.*
5. Fugit irreparabile tempus. *Virg.*
6. Gallia omnis divīsa. *Cæs.*
7. Magnæ divitiæ dilabuntur. *Sal.*
8. Omnis partūrit arbos. *Virg.*
9. Tenēras mora percōquit uvas. *Ov.*
10. Romānum imperium habet exordium. *Eut.*
11. Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem pudici-  
tiæ suæ luxērunt. *Eut.*
12. Sol crescentes decēdens duplicat umbras. *Virg.*
13. Experientia est magister optīmus. *Cic.*
14. Magnum est vectīgal parsimonia. *Cic.*
15. Terra salutāres herbas nutrit. *Ov.*
16. Degenēres anīmos timor arguit. *Virg.*
17. Nero retībus aureis piscabātur. *Eut.*
18. Mens sana corpōre sano. *Juv.*
19. Vocem sancta misit religio. *Phæd.*
20. Ebriētas est voluntaria insania. *Sen.*
21. Stylus optīmus magister. *Cic.*
22. Anīmus rector humāni genēris. *Sal.*

6. *Omnis Gallia*, all Gaul or France, *divisa (est)*.  
 18. *Est* is understood after *sana*; *sano corpore*, in a sound body. 21. *Stylus*, the iron pen with which the Romans wrote on their tables of wax. It was brought to a sharp point at one end, to write with; and the other was made broad like a spade to obliterate what they wished to alter. 22. *Animus (est)*, &c.

23. Societātis humanæ vinculum est ratio. *Cic.*
24. Gener Tarquinii ingentem collēgit exercitum. *Eut.*
25. Omnium rerum vicissitūdo est. *Ter.*
26. Ultio est animi exigui voluptas. *Juv.*
27. Urbem exiguam Romūlus constituit. *Eut.*
28. Lingua mali pars pessīma servi. *Juv.*
29. Usus rerum est optimus praeceptor. *Cic.*
30. Maximum irae remedium dilatio est. *Sen.*
31. Tota philosophōrum vita commentatio mortis est. *Cic.*
32. Bona pars homīnum decepta cupidīne falso. *Hor.*

28. *Lingua (est) pessima pars mali servi.*

## EXAMPLES

*Illustrating the latter part of Rule IV.*

If the adjective or participle governs some following word, that adjective or participle is construed after the noun with which it agrees.

1. Aristīdes æquālis fuit Themistōcli. *Nep.*

1. *Aristides fuit æqualis Themistocli.*

---

When the adjective or participle governs a word, where is it construed?

*Which is the adjective or participle? The noun with which it agrees?*

2. Cato cupidissĭmus literārum fuit. *Nep.*
3. Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet. *Ov.*
4. Pecōra natūra ventri obedientia finxit. *Sal.*
5. Aspĭce jucundo labentes murmure rivos. *Ov.*
6. Romŭlus invitāvit vicĭnas urbi natiōnes. *Eut.*
7. Homĭnes cupĭdi rerum novārum. *Cæs.*
8. Iracundia est inimĭca consilio. *Cic.*
9. Epaminondas erat studiōsus audiendi. *Nep.*
- 10 Homĭni utilissĭmus est cibus simplex. *Plin.*
11. Homo est pręstantior feris. *Cic.*
12. Ferę sunt expertes ratiōnis. *Cic.*
13. Invia virtūti nulla est via. *Ov.*
14. Epaminondas erat veritātis diligens. *Nep.*

2. Cato fuit cupidissimus, very fond, literarum.  
 3. Mens conscia recti ridet. 4. Natura finxit pecora obedientia ventri. 5. Aspice rivos labentes jucundo murmure. 6. Romulus invitavit nationes vicinas, near urbi.  
 7. Homines (sunt) cupidi, desirous novarum rerum.  
 8. Consilio, to reason. 12. Ferę sunt expertes, destitute rationis. 14. Epaminondas erat diligens veritatis.



NOTE I.—The noun is frequently understood.

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. Sapiens est beātus.                        | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 2. Omnia fert ætas.                           | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 3. Fortes fortūna adjūvat.                    | <i>Ter.</i>  |
| 4. Socrātes sapientissīmus judicātus est.     | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 5. Est difficīlis cura rerum alienārum.       | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 6. Bona cogītat.                              | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 7. Mors omnībus est commūnis.                 | <i>Ov.</i>   |
| 8. Jovis omnia plena.                         | <i>Virg.</i> |
| 9. Fallacia alia aliam trudit.                | <i>Ter.</i>  |
| 10. Defatigātus.—Facta omnia.                 | <i>Ter.</i>  |
| 11. Voluptāte capiuntur omnes.                | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 12. Nihil amicitīā præstabilius est.          | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 13. Decīpit frons prima multos.               | <i>Phæd.</i> |
| 14. Nil mortalībus arduum est.                | <i>Hor.</i>  |
| 15. Ingenii egregia facinōra immortalia sunt. | <i>Sal.</i>  |
| 16. Rari boni.                                | <i>Juv.</i>  |

1. *Homo* is understood after *sapiens*. 2. *Fert*, bears away. 8. *Omnia*, all things (*sunt*) are *plena Jovis* from *Jupiter*. 10. *Defatigatus* (*sum*).—*Omnia* (*sunt*) *facta*. 16. *Boni*, good men (*sunt*) *rari*.

---

Are not adjectives often placed without a noun? What noun is understood when the adjective is masculine? (See "Introduction to Latin Construing," p. 81.) What, when the adjective is neuter? page 81.

17. Perutiles Xenophontis libri sunt. *Cic.*  
 18. Omnes recta consilia damus. *Ter.*  
 19. Natūra parvo contenta est. *Cic.*

18. *Omnes*, we all *damus*, &c.

In a simple sentence there may be excited in the mind a sudden emotion which is denoted by an interjection; and the verb, participle, or adjective, may have the time, circumstance, quality, or manner of its signification, expressed by an adverb.

## RULE V.

*Interjections and adverbs may be construed where they best suit the sense; but an interjection should be generally taken the first word in the sentence, and an adverb as near as possible to the verb, participle, or adjective.*

1. Ah! quantò satius est. *Ter.*  
 2. Tùm victus est. *Eut.*  
 3. Oh! cohibēte iras. *Virg.*  
 4. Heù! quàm difficile est. *Ov.*  
 5. Jàm jàm mora est. *Virg.*  
 6. Nunc frondent silvæ. *Virg.*  
 7. Postea victi sunt. *Eut.*  
 8. Deindè regnum Priscus accēpit. *Eut.*

4. *Heù* alas! *quàm difficile*, how difficult, *est*.

---

What is an adverb? With what is it construed?

9. Sæpè summa ingenia latent. *Plaut.*  
 10. Sïc stat sententia. *Ov.*  
 11. Nero nullam vestem bis induit. *Suet.*  
 12. Sicilia primò habuit nomen Trinacriæ.  
*Just.*  
 13. Interdùm lachrymæ pondëra vocis habent. *Ov.*  
 14. Jejūnus stomăchus rarò vulgaria temnit.  
*Hor.*  
 15. Mens sapientis sempër erit tranquilla.  
*Cic.*  
 16. Nemo repentè fuit turpissimū. *Juv.*  
 17. Labitur occultè volatilis ætas. *Ov.*  
 18. Titus causas Latīnè egit. *Eut.*  
 19. Catilīna maxīmè adolescentium familiaritātes adpetēbat.  
*Sal.*  
 20. Liberiūs vivendi fuit potestas. *Ter.*  
 21. Facilè omnes recta consilia damus. *Ter.*  
 22. Jus summum sæpè summa est malitia.  
*Ter.*  
 23. Dictum sapienti sāt est. *Ter.*

13. *Pondera*, the effects. 17. *Occultè* imperceptibly. 18. *Egit* pleaded, *causas* causes, *Latīnè* in Latin. 19. *Adpetebat* for *appetebat* from *appeto*. 21. *Omnes*, we all, *facilè damus*, &c.

---

How do you know that *omnes*, Ex. 21, is to be construed *we all*? See Rule II, note 1, p. 15.

24. Nūm ejus color pudōris signum usquàm  
indīcat? *Ter.*

25. Itērūm Tarquinius Romam penè cepit.  
*Eut.*

26. Dignītas tribunōrum militarium nōn diū  
perseverāvit. *Eut.*

27. Repentè vocem sancta misit religio.  
*Phæd.*

28. Nūnc omnis partūrit arbos. *Virg.*

29. Nōn omnia possūmus omnes. *Virg.*

30. Omnium rerum heūs vicissitūdo. *Ter.*

31. Ultio sempèr est anīmi exigui voluptas.  
*Juv.*

24. When a question is asked, the auxiliary, in English, is put before the nominative case : as, *Nūm color ejus*, does his colour, *usquàm indicat signum pudoris* ?  
25. *Cepit*, from *capio*. 30. *Heūs vicissitudo (est)*.

A simple sentence can contain only one finite verb : but still, it may admit a verb in the infinitive mood.

## RULE VI.

*The infinitive mood is generally taken after another verb.*

1. Cæsar etiam lachrymas fudisse dicītur.  
*Eut.*

1. *Fudisse* from *fundo*.

---

What do you mean by an INFINITIVE mood ? Where is a verb of the infinitive mood construed ?



2. Heu, quàm difficile est crimen nòn pro-  
dère. *Ov.*
3. Anĩmus debet imperāre corpus. *Sal.*
4. Librum scribère difficile est. *Mart.*
5. Pars quædam cerēbri vidētur anĩmi prin-  
cipātum tenēre. *Cic.*
6. Humāna potest memoria recordāri. *Eut.*
7. Parce pias scelerāre manus. *Virg.*
8. Druĩdes magnum numērum versuum  
ediscere dicuntur. *Cæs.*
9. Natūram mutāre pecunia nescit. *Hor.*
10. Admonēri bonus gaudet. *Sen.*
11. Nescit vox missa reverti. *Hor.*
12. Nunquàm satīs laudāri potest philoso-  
phia. *Cic.*
13. Vir optĩmus difficillimè alios esse im-  
prōbos suspicātur. *Cic.*
14. Jubes me bona cogitāre. *Cic.*

7. *Parce*, forbear. 8. *Druid-es, um*, the Druids, the priests of the ancient Gauls. 11. *Vox*, a word.

NOTE 1.—If the infinitive mood be not governed by a verb, &c. you must take the accusative case before the infinitive, putting *that* before it, and construe the accusative

---

*Which is the infinitive mood ? The word by which it is governed ?*

case as if it were the nominative, and the infinitive mood generally as the same tense as the preceding verb, and the same number and person as the accusative case.

1. Me commerēri culpam scio \*. *Plaut.*
2. Homīnem principem reliquārum rerum  
voluit esse Deus. *Cic.*
3. Miror te nōn scribēre. *Cic.*
4. Eos cives nōn esse necessarios. *Eut.*
5. Omnem crede diem diluxisse suprēmum.  
*Hor.*
6. Plato vinum puēris negandum esse  
putat. *Sen.*
7. Sensi ego omni ætāti mortem esse com-  
mūnem. *Cic.*
8. Me liceat casūs miserēri insontis amīci.  
*Virg.*

2. *Principem*, the lord, *reliquarum rerum*, of other things or creatures.

---

How do you construe an infinitive mood, not governed by another verb? What case do you take first? What is put before it? Like what mood and tense do you then construe the infinitive?

*Which is the accusative case? The infinitive mood?*

---

\* Most of these sentences may be construed by the general directions in the preceding Rules; thus, 1. *Scio* I know, *me* myself, *commereri* to deserve, *culpam* blame. 2. *Deus* God, *voluit* wished, *hominem* man, *esse* to be, *principem reliquarum rerum*.

9. Consūles se sciēbant esse privātos. *Eut.*

10. Nè feras molestè te monēri. *Cic.*

11. Tradītum est Homērum cæcum fuisse.  
*Cic.*

10. *Nè feras* you cannot declare, *te* that you, *moneri* molestè.

NOTE 2.—*Me, te, se, illum, &c.* are often understood.

1. Reddēre posse negābat. *Virg.*

2. Forsàn hæc olīm meminisse juvābit.  
*Virg.*

3. Juvat evasisse tot urbes. *Virg.*

4. Juvat fugam tenuisse. *Virg.*

5. Prohibent cætēra Parcæ scire. *Virg.*

6. Deus festināre fugam eccè stimūlat.  
*Virg.*

1. *Se* is understood before *posse*. 2. *Te*, or some other pronoun, is understood before *meminisse*. 4. *Nos* after *juvat*. 5. *Parcæ* the fates, *prohibent (te)* scire. 6. *Eccè Deus stimulat (me) festinare*.

NOTE 3.—*Esse*, or *fuisse*, is often omitted after participles.

1. Sperat adolescens diū se victūrum. *Cic.*

1. *Esse* is understood after *victurum*.

---

What pronouns are often understood before the infinitive mood?

Are not *esse* and *fuisse* sometimes understood? When?

2. Catullus negāret se bellum compositū-  
rum. *Nep.*
3. Legātos missūros dixērunt. *Nep.*
4. Sperāte Deos memōres fandi. *Virg.*
5. Suam quisque condiōnem miserrīmam  
putat. *Cic.*
6. Tūm magnum exitium imperio futūrum.

4. *Sperate deos*, that the gods (*esse*) are, &c. *fandi*, of what is fit to be spoken, or right. 5. *Suam condi- tionem* that his own situation, *esse* is, *miserrimam*. 6. *Tūm* then that, *magnum exitium futurum* (*esse*).

NOTE 4.— Sometimes an infinitive mood, depending upon no other word, is taken the first word in the sentence.

1. Cupere omnia scire curiosōrum est. *Cic.*
2. Duci cupiditāte scientiæ summōrum  
virōrum est. *Cic.*
3. Ingenuas didicisse fidelitèr artes  
Emollit mores. *Ov.*
4. Tempestātem optāre dementis est. *Cic.*
5. Subvenire tempestāti sapientis est. *Cic.*

1. *Cupere scire omnia est* (*pars* the part, or property) *curiosorum*. 2. *Duci cupiditate scientiæ est* (*pars* the part, or property), &c. 4. *Optare tempestatem est dementis*. 5. *Subvenire* to give help, *tempestati* to affliction.



Verbs sometimes govern more than one case.

## RULE VII.

*When several cases come after the verb, take the nominative or accusative first with its genitive case, if any, then the dative or ablative, with its genitive, &c.*

1. Cleopātra sibi aspīdem admīsīt. *Eut.*
2. Corvus unguībus Galli oculus verberavit. *Eut.*
3. Pedibus timor addidit alas. *Virg.*
4. Cæsar Britannis mōx bellum intulit. *Eut.*
5. Claudius filio suo Britannici nomen imposuit. *Eut.*
6. Themistocles omne tempus literis Persarum dedit. *Nep.*
7. Bonis omnibus hostis fuit Nero. *Eut.*

1. *Cleopatra*, queen of Egypt. 2. *Galli*, of the Gaul.  
6. *Dedit* applied, *literis* to the writings.

---

What is the seventh rule? Which case is immediately construed after the verb? When is the dative or ablative taken?

*Which is the accusative case? The dative? The ablative?*

8. Odērunt peccāre boni virtūtis amōre. *Hor.*
9. Plato vinum puēris vetat. *Cic.*
10. Deus nobis hēc otia fecit. *Virg.*
11. Nec placīdam membris dat cura quīē-  
tem. *Virg.*
12. Magister equitum Romæ primus fuit  
Cassius. *Eut.*
13. Tu silvestrem tenui musam meditāris  
avēnâ. *Virg.*
14. Palmam movet ordīne nemo. *Virg.*
15. Alcibiādes parsimoniâ cultūs omnes La-  
cedæmonios vincēbat. *Nep.*
16. Os homīni sublīme dedit Deus. *Ov.*
17. Pœnam misēro mens conscia donat.  
*Lucr.*
18. Gratiam tibi habeo maxīmam. *Ter.*
19. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi  
morte maculāvit. *Nep.*
20. Popūlus Romæ sibi tribūnos plebis  
creāvit. *Eut.*
21. Aspīce curvātos pomōrum pondēre ra-  
mos. *Ov.*

13. *Tu meditaris*, you play, *silvestrem musam*, *tenui avenâ* on a slender reed. 15. *Vincebat* surpassed, &c. *parsimoniâ* by the frugality. 18. *Habeo*, I give.

22. Sol implet mundum luce suâ. *Cic.*  
 23. Deteriōres sumus omnes licentiâ. *Ter.*  
 24. Heu, quàm difficile est crimen nōn pro-  
     dēre vultu ! *Ov.*  
 25. Centum luminībus caput Argus habēbat. *Ov.*  
 26. Dictātor Romæ primus fuit Lartius. *Eut.*

A preposition and its case may be included in a simple sentence : though prepositions are generally placed after the verb, they sometimes precede it.

### RULE VIII.

*After a preposition, look for an accusative or ablative case.*

The preposition with its case, is generally construed towards the end of a sentence.

1. Romānum imperium a Romūlo exordium habet. *Eut.*
2. Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem pudicitiae suæ per annum luxērunt. *Eut.*
3. Annum Numa descripsit in decem menses. *Eut.*
3. *Descripsit*, divided.

---

Where are the preposition and its case generally placed ? For what case do you look after a preposition ?  
*Which is the preposition ? The case governed by it ?*

4. Nimiùm ad rem in senectâ attenti sumus. *Ter.*
5. Fas est ab hoste docēri. *Ov.*
6. Ut sæpè summa ingenia in occulto latent! *Plaut.*
7. Druīdes a bello abesse consuevērunt. *Cæs.*
8. Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo potest. *Cic.*
9. Anīmo cum hac carne grave certāmen est. *Cic.*
10. Gallia est omnis divīsa in partes tres. *Cæs.*
11. Puēri inter sese quàm pro levībus noxiis iras gerunt! *Ter.*
12. Omnis in Ascanio cari stat cura parentis. *Virg.*
13. Diligentia in omnībus rebus plurīmum valet. *Cic.*
14. Nè existīmes ullam sine labōre esse virtutem. *Sen.*
15. Cæsar ad Tamēsīn exercitum duxit. *Cæs.*

4. *Ad rem*, to money. 6. *Ut sæpè* how often, in *occulto* in obscurity. 7. *Consueverunt* from *consuesco*. 8. *Beatus*, happy. 9. *Grave certamen est animo*, in the mind, *cum hac carne*, or, There is a great contest between the body and mind. 11. *Quàm* how, *pueri* do boys, *gerunt iras inter sese pro levibus noxiis!* 15. *Tamēsīn*, the river Thames which flows through London.



16. Intra fortūnam quisque debet manēre  
suam. *Ov.*

17. Sine virtūte amicitia esse nōn potest. *Cic.*

18. Potes hoc sub casu ducere somnos?

*Virg.*

19. Proba vita est via ad cælum. *Cic.*

20. Galli in liberos vitæ habent potestatem.

*Cæs.*

21. Romulus Senatōres nomināvit propter  
senectutem. *Eut.*

22. Urbem exigua in Palatino monte Ro-  
mulus constituit. *Eut.*

23. Socrates philosophiam devocavit e cælo.  
*Cic.*

18. When a question is asked, the nominative case in English comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the verb; as, *Potes* can you, *ducere* take, *somnos*, &c. See page 58, No. 4, &c.

NOTE 1.—If a word, governed by a preposition, have a genitive case depending upon it, that genitive case is often elegantly placed between the preposition and the word which it governs; but the preposition and its case must be construed by Rule VIII, and

---

Are any words placed between a preposition and its case? In what instance does this take place?

the genitive case after it according to Rule III.

1. Omnes trahimur ad cognitiōnis cupiditatem. *Cic.*
2. Omnes artes in veri investigatiōne versantur. *Cic.*
3. Expetuntur divitiæ ad usus vitæ necessarios. *Cic.*
4. Post hæc Annibal diffidère jam de belli cœpit eventu. *Eut.*
5. Duci cupiditate scientiæ ad magnarum rerum contemplatiōnem summorum virorum est. *Cic.*
6. Venit Cæsar magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. *Cæs.*
7. Priscus Tarquinius per Anci filios occisus est. *Eut.*
8. Prænestini usque ad Romæ portas bello venerant. *Eut.*
9. Miltiades cæteras insulas sub Atheniensium redēgit potestatem. *Nep.*

3. The genitive case, *vitæ*, is here placed between the adjective *necessarios* and its substantive *usus*, which is governed by *ad*. 5. *Duci cupiditate scientiæ ad contemplationem magnarum rerum est*, &c.

---

*Which is the genitive case ? Between what two words is it placed ?*

10. De Magōnis interītu duplex memoria  
prodīta est. *Nep.*

### THE AMPLIFICATION OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

The manner of amplifying simple sentences by the addition of words, according to the preceding rules, may be seen in the following examples.

1. Matrōnæ luxērunt.

Matrōnæ *defensōrem* luxērunt.

Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem luxērunt.

Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem *pudicitiaē*  
luxērunt.

Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem pudicitiaē  
*suæ* luxērunt.

Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem pudicitiaē  
*suæ per annum* luxērunt. *Eut.*

---

2. Pausanias gloriam maculāvit.

Pausanias *magnam* gloriam maculāvit.

Pausanias magnam *belli* gloriam maculāvit.

Pausanias magnam belli gloriam *turpi*  
*morte* maculāvit. *Nep.*

---

3. Culmīna fumant.

*Jām* culmīna fumant.

*Jām summa* culmīna fumant.

Jàm summa *villārum* culmīna fumant.

Jàm summa *procūl* villārum culmīna fumant. *Virg.*

---

4. Difficile est.

*Quàm* difficile est !

*Heu*, *quàm* difficile est !

*Heu*, *quàm* difficile est *crimen* nòn *prodere* !

*Heu*, *quàm* difficile est *crimen* nòn *prodere vultu* ! *Ov.*

---

5. Claudius insūlas addidit.

Claudius *quasdam* insūlas addidit.

Claudius *quasdam* insūlas *imperio* addidit.

Claudius *quasdam* insūlas *Romāno* imperio addidit.

Claudius *quasdam* insūlas *ultra Britan-*  
*niam* *Romāno* imperio addidit. *Eut.*

---

The eight preceding rules for construing a simple sentence, may be easily reduced to this

## GENERAL RULE.

SOME INTERJECTIONS, ADVERBS, &c. as *heu*, *quàm*, *jàm*, &c. may be first taken.



The **NOMINATIVE**, with its adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, must then be construed.

After the nominative, the **GENITIVE** case, governed by the nominative, must be taken, and to that genitive case must be added every word agreeing with it.

The **VERB** must be construed after the nominative and its dependents.

The **ADVERB**, or word restraining or increasing the sense, must generally be taken with the verb ; or,

Next after the verb may come another verb of the **INFINITIVE MOOD**.

**THE CASES WHICH THE VERB GOVERNS** may be taken after the verb ; first the accusative or nominative, then the dative, ablative, or genitive, with the adjective, or adjective-pronoun agreeing with the noun.

After the cases governed by the verb, may follow the **PREPOSITION**, and its **NOUN**, with every word depending on it.

## CHAPTER II.

---

### *The Analysis, or the Method of construing Compound Sentences.*

A compound sentence has more than one nominative case, or one finite verb, either expressed or understood; or it consists of two or more simple sentences, connected by *relatives* or *conjunctions*: as,

1. Omnia vincit amor, *et* nos cedāmus amōri.

*Virg.*

*Love overcomes all things, and we can give  
way to love.*

2. Feliciter is sapit, *qui* aliēno pericūlo sapit.

*Plaut.*

*He is happily wise, who is wise at another's  
danger.*

The parts of a compound sentence are separated from each other by marks or stops. The smaller divisions of a sentence named *clauses*, are separated by this mark (,) called a *comma*, as in the preceding examples.

---

What is a compound sentence? By what words are simple sentences connected, to form a compound sentence?

What are the smaller parts of a compound sentence called? By what are they separated? Make a comma.

In each of these sentences, there are two clauses—the former connected by the conjunction *et*, *and*,—the latter by the relative *qui*, *who*. The greater divisions named *members*, are separated by this mark (;) called a *semicolon*; or this (:) called a *colon*: as,

3. Alexander Magnus nullam urbem obsēdit, *quam* non expugnāverit: nullam gentem adiit, *quam* non calcāverit. *Just.*

*Alexander the Great besieged no city, which he did not take: he came to no nation, which he did not subdue.*

In this sentence there are two members, divided by a colon; and two clauses in each member, separated by commas, but connected by the relative *quam*, *which*.

4. Omnes se Britanni vitro inficiunt, *quod* cæruleum efficit colōrem; atque hōc horribiliōre sunt in pugnâ aspectu. *Cæs.*

*All the Britons stain themselves with woad, which produces a blue colour; and from hence they are of a more terrible aspect in battle.*

---

What are the greater divisions of a compound sentence called? Make a semicolon and colon.

Give the third example. How many members are there in it? Point them out. How many clauses? Which are they?

How many clauses are there in the fourth example? Name them in order. How many members? Point them out.

This sentence contains two *members*, divided by a *semicolon*. The former member contains two clauses, connected by the relative *quod*, *which*, and the latter only one clause.

---

#### THE CONSTRUING OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

If the construction of simple sentences be perfectly understood, there will not be much difficulty in construing compound sentences, as they are composed of two or more simple sentences, joined together by relatives or conjunctions. Every clause, in a compound sentence, would be a perfect simple sentence, if taken separately, and must be construed exactly as directed in the preceding Rules for Simple Sentences. The commas marking off the clauses, and the semicolon, or colon, dividing the sentence into members, should be carefully observed: they divide a long sentence into smaller parts, and are intended for resting places, while travelling through it. The whole attention should be given to the first clause; and, when this is perfectly understood, the second should be taken, and thus proceed from comma to comma, and colon to colon through the whole sentence. The following Rule is, therefore, necessary. It is a want of attention to it, which confuses you in construing your lessons; but this and the following Rule, closely followed, will be found so comprehensive as often to lead you pleasantly through very long sentences.

---

Of what are compound sentences composed? How is every clause of a compound sentence construed? What should be carefully noted? Why should the stops be noticed? Upon what part of a sentence should the attention be first fixed? What next? What makes construing difficult?



## RULE I.

Generally *take every word in a clause, and always every word in a member on which you enter, before you begin another, observing all the preceding Rules, respecting a simple sentence, as you construe each clause in succession.*

1. Percontatōrem fugīto ; nam garrūlus idem est. *Hor.*

2. Sincērum est nisi vas, quodcumque infundis acescit. *Hor.*

3. Me nemo interpellat, omnes diligunt. *Cic.*

4. Ut medicīna sit ars valetudīnis ; sic prudentia sit vivendi. *Cic.*

5. Ut natūra ad aliquem morbum proclivior ; sic anīmus alius ad alia vitia propensior. *Cic.*

What is the first rule for construing a compound sentence ? Is every word in a member always taken before you begin another ? Is every word in a clause *always* or *generally* taken before you begin another ? See Rule V, p. 59. What rules do you follow in construing clauses and members ?

*Is the first part of the sentence a clause, or a member ? How do you know it is a clause ? Why is it a member ?*

6. Obstupui, stetēruntque comæ, et vox faucibus hæsit. *Virg.*

7. Tu nè cede malis ; sed contrà audentior ito. *Virg.*

8. Naturāles divitias dixit parabiles esse, quòd parvo esset natūra contenta. *Cic.*

9. Diligentia in omnibus rebus plurimùm valet : nihil est quod hæc non assèqui possit. *Cic.*

10. Ubì socordiæ te tradidēris, nequidquàm deos implōres ; irāti, infestique sunt. *Sal.*

11. Dictātor autem Romæ primus fuit Lartius ; magister equitum primus Cassius. *Eut.*

12. Principiis obsta : serò medicīna parātur, Cùm mala per longas convaluère moras. *Ov.*

13. Poma dat autumnus : formōsa est messibus æstas :

7. *Tu nè* do not you, *cede* yield, &c. 10. *Ubì* when, *tradideris* you shall have given up, *te* yourself, *socordiæ*, &c. 11. *Fuit* is understood after *Cassius*, by Note 2, page 16. 12. *Cùm mala convaluère* for *convalluerunt*.

---

Divide *diligentia* (Example 9) into syllables. Is *e* long or short? Why long? Where is the accent? Why is it on *gen*? Where is the accent placed in *rebus*? Why is it on *re*?

Ver præbet flores : igne levātur hiems.

*Ov.*

14. Ut ager sine cultūrâ fructuōsus non est, sic sine doctrinâ animus ; ita est utrăque res sine altērâ debīlis ; cultūra autem animi philosophia est.

*Cic.*

14. *Sic animus (est) sine doctrinâ.*

## RULE II.

*First take the nominative case or cases, with the adjective or adjectives, genitive case or cases, and other words agreeing with the genitive ; afterwards the verb or verbs, and then the cases governed by the verb.*

This is very similar to the first Rule given for construing a Simple Sentence. It differs, however, in directing two or more nominative cases, adjectives, or verbs, to be taken, and thereby proving the Sentence to be Compound.

1. Præclāra facies, magnæ divitiæ, alia hujusmōdi omnia dilabuntur ; at ingenii egregia facinōra immortalia sunt.

*Sal.*

What is the second Rule for a compound sentence ? How does it differ from the first Rule for simple sentences ?

*Which are the nominative cases ? The verb or verbs ?*

2. Divitiæ, bona valetūdo, potentia, honōres, sunt incerta. *Cic.*

3. Societātis humanæ vinculum sunt ratio atque oratio. *Cic.*

4. Temeritas, libido, et ignavia semper animum excruciant. *Cic.*

5. Contentum suis rebus esse, maximæ sunt certissimæque divitiæ. *Cic.*

5. *Maximæ divitiæ que certissimæ sunt esse, &c.*

NOTE 1.—*A vocative case* or conjunction is often taken before the nominative case in compound sentences. See Rule V, page 24.

1. Dî, talem terris avertite pestem ! *Virg.*

2. Erîpe, nate, fugam, finemque impōne labōri. *Virg.*

3. Dî, prohibēte minas : Dî, talem avertite casum. *Virg.*

4. O dii immortāles ! nōn intelligunt homīnes quāmagnum vectīgal sit parsimonia ! *Cic.*

3. *Di, O ye gods, prohibete, suppress, &c. Min-æ, arum, threats.*

Where are vocative cases taken ?

*Which is the vocative case, adverb, conjunction, &c. to be taken before the verb ?*



5. O pater, annè aliquas ad cælum hinc  
ire putandum est

Sublīmes anīmas? itērùmque ad tarda  
reverti

Corpōra? *Virg.*

6. Da jungēre dextram, genitor. *Virg.*

7. — Scelestē, spirītu culpam lues  
Olīm quēm adscriptas venērit pœnæ dies.

*Phæd.*

5. *O pater, O father, annè putandum est,* is it to be imagined, *aliquas sublimes animas, &c.* 6. *Genitor, O father, da permit (me).*

NOTE 2.—The nominative case is frequently understood in one clause, and must be generally supplied by the nominative of the other.

1. Dido consilium vultu tegit, ac spem fronte serēnat. *Virg.*

2. Britanni plerīque frumenta nōn serunt,

1. *Consilium*, her design, &c. *serenat*, clears up, *spem*, hope, &c.

---

When a nominative case is not expressed in a latter clause, how is it found? When no nominative is expressed in the first clause, how is it found? See Note 1, page 15.

*What is the nominative case understood? What person is it?*

sed lacte et carne vivunt ; pellibusque sunt vestiti. *Cæs.*

3. Cincinnātus togam prætectam accēpit ; et liberāvit exercitum. *Eut.*

4. Themistōcles de instantibus verissimè judicābat ; et de futuris callidissimè conjiciēbat. *Nep.*

5. Omne animal id agit, ut seipsum conservet. *Cic.*

6. Atticus mendacium neque dicēbat, neque pati potērat. Itaque ejus comitas non sine severitate erat, neque gravitas sine facilitate : ut difficile esset intellectu, utrū eum amici magis vererentur, an amarent. *Nep.*

7. Numa annum descripsit in decem menses, prius sine aliqua computatione confusum ; et infinita Romæ templa constituit. *Eut.*

8. Priscus numerum senatorum duplicavit ; Circum Romæ ædificavit ; ludos Romanos instituit. *Eut.*

4. *De instantibus (rebus)*, concerning present things.  
8. *Circum*, the Circus, a large enclosed place in Rome, where the people assembled to see chariot races, and contests of agility and strength, such as running, leaping, wrestling, throwing the discus, &c.

9. Scipiōnem dicere solitum scripsit Cato, “Nunquàm se minùs otiōsum esse, quàm cùm otiōsus: nec minùs solum, quàm cùm solus esset.” *Cic.*

10. Cùm in cœnâ recordātus fuisset, Titus, nihil se illo die cuiquam præstitisse, dixit, “O amīci, hodiè diem perdīdi.” *Eut.*

11. Epaminondas erat prudens, temporibus sapientèr utens: adeò veritātis diligens, ut ne joco quidèm mentirètur. Studiōsus audiendi: ex hoc enim facillimè disci arbitrabātur. *Nep.*

12. Temporibus certis matūram rusticus  
uvam

Deligit; et nudo sub pede musta fluunt:  
Temporibus certis desectas alligat herbas;  
Et tonsam raro pectine verrit humum. *Ov.*

13. Labitur occultè, fallitque, volatilis  
ætas. *Ov.*

14. Nero imperium Romānum et deformāvit, et diminuit. *Eut.*

9. *Cato scripsit Scipionem* that Scipio, *solitum* (esse) was accustomed, *dicere se*, &c.—Because when Scipio was alone, he constantly employed himself in reading and thinking. 12. *Rusticus deligit*, gathers, from *del-igo, igis, ēgi, ectum*. *Temporibus certis*, at proper seasons. *Raro pectine*, with a wide rake. 13. *Volatilis ætas labitur occultè que fallit*. 14. *Et deformavit*, both, &c., *et diminuit*, and, &c.

15. *Studia adolescentiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium præbent; delectant domi, non impediunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.* *Cic.*

NOTE 3. — A verb, and sometimes a nominative case and verb, when once expressed in the sentence, may be understood in other clauses. They must be supplied in construing as the sense requires.

When two words are joined together by a conjunction, the words understood need not be always supplied, as the sense will be evident without filling up the ellipsis. We can say, *Titus was called the love and delight of the human race: deliciæ, delight, may be considered the nominative joined by the conjunction, et, to amor, love; but in reality it follows dicebatur; and if the words understood be supplied, the sentence will stand—Titus dicebatur amor, et Titus dicebatur deliciæ, &c.*

1. *Amor et deliciæ humāni generis Titus dicebātur.* *Eut.*

---

What may be understood? Are they always supplied? When are the words understood to be supplied?

If *et deliciæ* were taken out of the first Example, would the remainder be a simple or compound sentence? Why? Can you supply the words omitted between *et* and *deliciæ*, and make a complete simple sentence?

*What is the verb understood? Fill up the ellipsis.*



2. Titus poëmăta et tragoedias Græcè composuit. *Eut.*

3. Manlius captivos et Asdrubălem Romam reportăvit. *Eut.*

4. Pan curat oves, oviumque magistros. *Virg.*

5. Venit summa dies, et ineluctabile tempus. *Virg.*

6. Candīda pax homīnes, trux decet ira feras. *Ov.*

7. Si genus humānum et mortalia temnītis arma ;

At sperāte deos memōres fandi atque nefandi. *Virg.*

8. Domitiānus Domīnum se, et Deum, appellāri jussit. *Eut.*

9. Hæc novalia miles habēbit? Barbărus has segētes? *Virg.*

10. Torva læna lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam. *Virg.*

11. Romānæ matrōnæ defensōrem pudī-

3. *Ad* is understood before *Romam*. 4. *Pan*, the god of shepherds, hunters, &c.: *magistros ovium*, the shepherds. 7. *Sperate*, expect: *fandi*, of right, from *fandus*, participle, proper to be spoken. *Nefandi*, of wrong, from *ne*, not, and *fandus*. 9. *Habebit* is understood after *Barbarus*. 10. *Sequitur* is understood after *ipse*.

citiæ suæ, quasi commūnem patrem, per annum luxērunt. *Eut.*

12. Multi mortāles dediti ventri, atque somno. *Sal.*

13. Discite justitiam, et nōn temnere divos. *Virg.*

14. Omnes sibi malle meliūs esse, quān alteri. *Ter.*

15. Nihil loci est segnitiae, neque socordia. *Ter.*

16. Magnos homīnes virtūte metimur, nōn fortunā. *Nep.*

17. Gutta cavat lapīdem nōn vi, sed sæpè cadendo :

Sic vir fit doctus nōn vi, sed sæpè legendo.

18. Consūmit ferrum, lapīdemque, vetustas. *Ov.*

19. Nec lachrymis crudēlis amor, nec gramina rivis,

Nec cytiso saturantur apes, nec fronde capellæ. *Virg.*

20. Victus, cultusque corpōris ad valetudinem referātur, et ad vires, nōn ad voluptātem. *Cic.*

12. *Sunt*, after *dediti*. 14. *Omnes*, that all, *malle esse meliūs sibi*, quān *alteri*. 19. *Saturatur* is understood after *crudelis amor*, and *saturantur* in the other clauses.

21. Nunc omnis ager, nunc omnis parturit  
arbos. *Virg.*

### RULE III.

*All words signifying the same thing, or put in apposition, and those which answer to each other, such as, Talis, qualis; Tantus, quantus; Sic, ut; and Tam, quam; must be construed as near together as possible.*

1. Brutum Romānæ matrōnæ, defensōrem pudicitiae suæ, quasi commūnem patrem, per annum luxērunt. *Eut.*

2. Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, septīmus atque ultīmus regum Romanōrum, templum Jovi in Capitolio ædificāvit. *Eut.*

3. Post Tullum Hostilium, Ancus Marcius, Numæ ex filiâ nepos, suscēpit imperium. *Eut.*

4. Assentatio, vitiōrum adjūtrix, procūl amoveātur ab amicitia. *Cic.*

5. Atticus habēbat avuncūlum, Quintum

What do you mean by words put in apposition? Where are they to be construed?

Where is the accent in *Brutum* (Example 1)? Why on *Brū*? Where in *Romanæ*? Why?

*Which are the words put in apposition?*

Cæcilium, equitem Romānum, familiārem  
Lucii Luculli, divitem, difficillimā naturā.

*Nep.*

6. Galli Mercurium, omnium inventorem  
artium, ferunt.

*Cæs.*

7. Cimon, Miltiādis filius, Atheniensis,  
sæpè quum aliquem offensum fortunā vidēret  
minùs benè vestitum, suum amiculum dedit.

*Nep.*

8. Brutus patriam liberāvit, præclārus  
auctor nobilitātis tuæ.

*Cic.*

5. *Familiarem*, the friend. 6. *Galli*, the Gauls,  
*ferunt*, call, *Mercurium*, Mercury, *inventorem*, the in-  
ventor, &c. 7. *Offensum*, ill-treated: *suum amiculum*,  
his upper garment or cloak.

NOTE 1.—When one word answers to  
another, it is better to defer taking the former  
word, till the other can be conveniently con-  
strued with it: such as, *talis, qualis; tam,*  
*quam; prius, quam; &c.*

1. Tale tuum carmen nobis, divīne poēta,  
Quale sopor fessis in gramīne. *Virg.*

1. Begin with the vocative, *Divine poēta tuum car-*  
*men (est) nobis tale, quale sopor (est) fessis (hominibus) in*  
*gramine.*

---

How do you take words that answer to each other?  
*Which are the words answering to each other?*



2. Tàm ego homo sum, quàm tu. *Plaut.*

3. Omnia priùs verbis experīri, quàm armis, sapientem decet. *Ter.*

4. In Miltiàde erat cùm summa humanitas, tùm mira comitas. *Nep.*

5. Cineas, legātus Pyrrhi, dixit, regum se patriam vidisse; scilicet tales illic esse omnes, qualis unus Pyrrhus apud Epīrum et reliquam Græciam putarētur. *Eut.*

6. Expetuntur autem divitiæ cùm ad usus vitæ necessarios, tùm ad perfruendas voluptates. *Cic.*

7. Agri fertiles plùs affērent quàm accēpēre. *Cic.*

3. *Decet sapientem experiri omnia verbis priùs quàm armis.*

## RULE IV.

*The relative, with its clause, must be construed as soon as possible after the antecedent.*

The relative, in all its cases, is mostly taken the first word in its own clause.

What is a relative? Is it used to connect sentences?  
Can there be a relative in a simple sentence?

Where must the relative and its clause be construed?

Which word is construed first in a relative clause?

1. Nihil est liberāle, quod non justum. *Cic.*

2. Feliciter is sapit, qui periculo aliēno sapit. *Plaut.*

3. Omnes se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cæruleum efficit colorem ; atque hōc horribiliore sunt in pugnâ adspectu. *Cæs.*

4. Nemo reperitur, qui sit studio nihil consecutus. *Quint.*

5. Nova Romæ dignitas est creāta, quæ Dictatūra appellatur, major quàm Consulatus. *Eut.*

6. Deōrum numero eos solos Germāni ducunt, quos cernunt, et quorum opibus apertè juvantur, Solem et Vulcānum et Lunam.

*Cæs.*

7. Omnes odērunt eos, qui sunt immemores beneficii ; et omnes amant animum gratum, et memorem beneficii. *Cic.*

8. An nōn imitāri agros fertiles debemus, qui multò plūs affērunt quàm accepere ? *Cic.*

9. Primus ad sapientiam gradus est seip-

3. *Inficiunt*, stain, *se*, themselves, *vitro*, with woad.

6. *Vulcanum*, fire. 8. *An non debemus imitari*, ought we not to resemble : *qui*, which, &c., *accepere* (for *acceperunt*), &c.

*Which is the relative clause ? Which word is the antecedent ?*

sum noscēre, quod, ut difficillimum est omnium, itā utilissimum. *Cic.*

10. Sicilia a principio patria Cyclōpum fuit : Cocālus regnum insulæ occupāvit ; post quem singulæ civitatēs in tyrannōrum imperium concessērunt, quorum nulla terra feracior fuit. *Just.*

11. Avaritia pecuniæ studium habet, quam nemo sapiens concupīvit. *Sal.*

12. Britanniae Claudius intulit bellum, quam nullus Romanōrum post Julium Cæsarem attigērat. *Eut.*

13. Felix, quem faciunt aliēna periculā cautum. *Hor.*

14. Romānum imperium a Romūlo exordium habet, qui cum Remo fratre uno partu edītus est. *Eut.*

15. Chreme tantumne a re tuā est otii tibi, Aliēna ut cures, ea quæ nihil ad te attinent ? Homo sum : humani nihil a me aliēnum puto. *Ter.*

10. *Cyclop-es, um*, pl. m. The Cyclops : they assisted Vulcan in making Jupiter's thunder-bolts. 11. *Concupivit*, from *concupisco*. 13. *Felix (est)*, he is a happy man, *quem aliena pericula faciunt*, &c. 15. *Chreme estne tantum otii tibi a tuā re*, business, *ut cures aliena*, other persons' affairs, *ea quæ attinent nihil ad te ?* *Homo sum : puto nihil humani*, of human nature, *alienum*, strange or foreign, *mihi*.

NOTE 1.—The antecedent is frequently understood, and may generally be supplied by a pronoun of the same gender as the relative : thus, *Quod*, that which ; *Qui*, he, or, they who.

1. *Quod honestum, id utile est.* *Cic.*

2. *Quicquid præcipies, esto brevis.* *Hor.*

3. *Qui pauca requirunt, non multis excidunt.* *Plaut.*

4. *Quod reipublicæ majus meliusve afferre possumus, quàm si docemus, atque erudimus juventutem ?* *Cic.*

5. *Quem fidum invenies, si tuis hostis fuëris ?* *Sal.*

6. *Invitat culpam, qui peccatum præterit.* *Virg.*

4. *Quod* what, *possumus* can we, *afferre* bring, *reipublicæ*, &c. 5. *Quem alienum*, what stranger, *invenies*, will you find, &c. *tuis*, to your own (friends) : thus, when a question is asked, you may also observe that, in English, the nominative is placed between the auxiliary and the verb : as, *possumus afferre*, can we bring, and *invenies*, will you find. See page 35, note to No. 18.

---

When the antecedent is not expressed, how is it supplied ? *What pronoun is the antecedent to the relative ?*

Is the *e* in *honestum* (Example 1) long or short ? Why ? Where is the accent ? Why on *nes* ?

A question being asked in English, where is the nominative case placed ?



7. Sāt habet fautōrum semp̄r, qui rectē facit. *Plaut.*

8. Quæ tibi promitto, sanctissimē observābo. *Cic.*

9. Quod prælārum est, idem arduum est. *Cic.*

10. Qui est particeps ratiōnis et oratiōnis, est præstantior quàm feræ. *Cic.*

11. Dimidium facti, qui benè cœpit, habet. *Hor.*

10. *Qui*, he who, &c. 11. *Qui benè cœpit*, habet *dimidium facti*.

## RULE V.

*A clause is frequently inserted within another, explaining some part of it. The inserted clause must be construed as near as possible to that part of the sentence which it illustrates, and according to the Rules for simple sentences.*

The principle of inserting one clause within another is very extensive ; and, when fully understood, will remove many difficulties in construing.

In the first Rule, you were not directed *always*, but *generally*, to take every word in one clause on which

---

Is one clause often inserted within another ?  
Where is the inserted clause to be construed ?  
Is this Rule of much service ?

you enter before you begin another, because of the exceptions introduced by the present Rule ; for, when there is no inserted clause, the first Rule is universally applicable. Though it is advisable to take the inserted clause as soon as convenient after the words which it illustrates, it may be sometimes construed in different places. In the first sentence, the inserted clause, *cum valemus*, may be construed at the beginning, middle, or end of the sentence. We can say, *When we are well*, we all, &c. ; or, We all, *when we are well*, &c. ; or, We all can easily give good directions to the sick, *when we are well*.

It may be useful to omit the inserted clause, printed in italics, in construing the following examples the first time ; and then it will be easily seen where the inserted clause or clauses may be best construed.

1. Facile omnes, *cum valēmus*, recta consilia ægrōtis damus. *Ter.*

2. Qui nōn vetat peccāre, *cum possit*, jubet. *Sen.*

3. Opprime, *dum nova sunt*, subiti mala semina morbi. *Ov.*

4. Alcibiādes, *quum tempus posceret*, laboriōsus in vitâ. *Nep.*

Does it not make an exception to the first Rule in compound sentences ? Explain it.

In how many places may the inserted clause be sometimes construed ? Give several examples.

*Which is the inserted clause ?*

5. In vestītu, *sicūt in plerisque rebus*, mediocrītas optīma est. Cic.

6. Inops, *potentem dūm vult imitāri*, perit. Phæd.

7. Forma honesti, *si oculis cernerētur*, mirabīles amōres, *ut ait Plato*, excitāret sapientiæ. Cic.

8. Cincinnātus, *cūm in opère et arans esset inventus*, Togam Prætextam accēpit. Eut.

9. Dariūs, *cūm ex Eurōpā in Asiam redisset*, classem quingentārum navium comparavit. Nep.

10. Datis, *etsi nōn locum æquum vidēbat suis*, configēre cupiēbat. Nep.

11. Pater Pomponii Attīci, *prout ipse amābat litēras*, omnībus doctrīnis filium erudit. Nep.

12. Equītes, *quūm est usus*, omnes in bello versantur. Cæs.

13. Ut ager, *quamvis fertilis*, sine cultūrâ

6. *Perit* from *pereo*, *perivi*, *perii*, and *peri*. 7. In this sentence there are two inserted clauses, *ut ait Plato*, and *si oculis cerneretur*. *Togam Prætextam*, a long white gown, fringed with purple, worn by magistrates as a mark of distinction. 12. *Omnes equites*. The equites or knights were that order of men among the Gauls, which conducted all warlike affairs. An eques among the Romans was engaged in war, and had his rank between the senators and commonalty.

fructuōsus esse nōn potest : sic sine doctrīnā  
anīmus. *Cic.*

14. Nil opus est, *dixit Romūlus*, certamīne ullo. *Ov.*

15. Est philosophia, *si interpretāri velis*,  
studium sapientiæ. *Cic.*

16. Ægrōto, *dūm anīma est*, spes est. *Cic.*

17. Ficta omnia celerit̃er, *tanquām flos-  
cūli*, decidunt. *Cic.*

18. Camissāres, *quòd et manu fortis, et  
bello strenuus*, habuit provinciam Ciliciæ.  
*Nep.*

NOTE 1.—The ablative absolute is frequently inserted within another clause.

The participle is construed after the word with which it agrees.

The ablative absolute is best taken first, but it may be construed, either before or after the other parts of a sentence, as best suits the sense.

1. Fabricius, *victis Samnitibus et Lucā-  
nis*, triumphāvit. *Eut.*

Where is the ablative absolute inserted ?

In the ablative absolute which word must be first construed ?

Is the ablative absolute an inserted clause ?

Where may it be construed ?

Which is the ablative absolute ?



2. Lucius Quintius Cincinnātus, cū in opère et arans esset inventus, *sudōre deterso*, Togam Prætextam accēpit ; et, *cæsis hostibus*, liberāvit exercitum. *Eut.*

3. Heu, nihil *invītis* fas quenquam fidere *Divis !* *Virg.*

4. Annibal, *relicto in Hispaniâ fratre Asdrubāle*, Pyrenæum transiit. *Eut.*

5. Nihil, *exceptâ virtūte*, amicitia præstabilius est. *Cic.*

6. Pompeius ad Judæam transgressus, *duodécim millibus Judæorum occisis*, Hierosolymam, caput gentis, tertio mense cepit. *Eut.*

7. Nemo nocens, *se judice*, absolvitur.

*Juv.*

8. Anno ab urbe conditâ sexcentesimo octogesimo nono, *Marco Tullio Cicerōne, Caio Antonio consulibus*, Lucius Sergius Catilina, nobilissimi generis vir, sed ingenii pravissimi, ad delendam patriam conjuravit, cum quibusdam claris quidē sed audacibus viris. *Eut.*

9. Tu nihil *invītâ* dices, faciesve, *Minervâ.* *Hor.*

3. *Divis invitis, heu nihil fas (est) it is not right, quenquam fidere.*

10. Cæsar, *bellis civilibus toto orbe compositis*, Romam rediit. *Eut.*

NOTE 2.—A relative clause is often inserted.

*Observation I.*—If the *nominative case* be the antecedent, the *inserted relative and its clause* are taken *immediately* after that *nominative case*.

This and the following observation on the relative clause, are comprehended in Rule IV, which must be closely followed in construing the Examples.

It would be better first to construe the sentence without the inserted clause, printed in italics; and, in the second reading, to take the relative clause immediately after the antecedent.

1. Leve fit, *quod benè fertur*, onus. *Ov.*

2. Exemplum, *litem quod lite resolvit*, nil agit. *Hor.*

3. Homo, *qui est particeps ratiōnis et*

2. *Exemplum*, the example, *quod*, &c.

Is a relative clause often inserted?

Where is the relative construed when the nominative case is the antecedent? If the relative clause be omitted, will not some sentences become simple? By what rules are relative and other clauses construed? See Rule I, p. 43.

*Which is the antecedent? What case is it?*

*oratiōnis*, est præstantior quàm feræ, quæ sunt expertes ratiōnis et oratiōnis. *Cic.*

4. Romānum imperium, *quo ab exordio ullum ferè minùs humāna potest memoria recordāri*, a Romūlo exordium habet.

5. Antonius, *qui Asiam et Orientem tenēbat*, Cleopātram Reginam Ægypti duxit uxōrem. *Eut.*

*Observation II.*—If the *antecedent* be governed by another word, the inserted relative clause, printed in italics, must be *passed over*, and not taken till you can construe the antecedent.

1. Camillus Volscōrum civitātem, *quæ per septuaginta annos bellum gessērat*, vicit. *Eut.*

2. Hoc quoque sit Attīci bonitātis exemplum, quòd cum Gellio Canio, *quem puerum in ludo cognovērat*, adeò conjunctè vixit, ut ad extrēmam ætātem amicitia eōrum creverit. *Nep.*

3. Deus omnium rerum, *quas natūra de-*

2. *Quòd adeò conjunctè vixit cum Gellio Canio, quem cognoverat puerum in ludo, at school, &c.*

---

If the relative refer to a word governed by a verb, where are the relative and its clause to be construed?

*sidērat*, abundantiam et copiam nobis sup-  
pedītat. *Cic.*

4. Miltiādes cætēras insūlas, *quæ Cyclā-  
des nominantur*, sub Atheniensium redēgit  
potestātem. *Nep.*

5. Cimon testārū suffragiis, *quod illi  
Ostracismum vocant*, decem annōrum exilio  
mulctātus est. *Nep.*

6. Homīnes, *quæ facere ipsi nōn possunt*,  
in altēro rectē fieri iudicant. *Cic.*

7. Festināre nocet, nocet et cunctatio  
sæpè :

*Tempore quæque suo qui facit, ille sapit.*  
*Ov.*

8. Meos amīcos, *in quibus est studium*,  
jubeo, ut a fontībus potiùs hauriant, quàm  
rivūlos consectentur. *Cic.*

5. *Cimon mulctatus est exilio decem annorum suffragiis  
testarum, quod illi vocant ostracismum. Ostracismum*  
was so called, from the custom of the Athenians writ-  
ing on shells the name of the person they wished to be  
banished. They cast these shells into an urn provided  
for the purpose. If the number of shells amounted to  
6,000, the suspected citizen was banished from Athens  
for ten years, but his property was not confiscated.  
6. *Homines judicant (negotia) fieri rectè in altero, quæ  
(negotia) ipsi non possunt facere. 7. Ille qui facit quæ-  
que (negotia) suo tempore, sapit.*

---

In example 4, and 6, what is the antecedent?  
*What case is it? Why?*



*Observation III.*—Another clause is sometimes inserted within the relative clause. This inserted clause, here printed in italics, is construed by Rule V.

1. Responsum est a senātu, eos cives nòn esse necessarios, qui, *cùm armāti essent*, capi potuissent. *Eut.*

2. Tùm Pyrrhus, admīrans Fabricium, dixisse fertur : “ Ille est Fabricius, qui difficiliùs ab honestāte, *quàm sol a cursu suo*, averti potest.” *Eut.*

3. Lucius Quintius Cincinnātus dictātor est factus ; qui, *agrum quatuor jugèrum possidens*, manibus suis colēbat. *Eut.*

4. Est profectò deus, qui, *quæ nos gerimus*, auditque et videt. *Plaut.*

1. The relative clause, *qui capi potuissent*, admits of *cum armati essent* after the relative. 2. The relative clause, *qui difficiliius ab honestate averti potest*, has a clause inserted within it, which must be construed by Rule V. 4. *Profectò deus est, qui et videt que audit (negotia) quæ nos gerimus.* These sentences should be first construed without the clause inserted within the relative clause.

May not a clause be inserted within the relative clause?  
Which is the relative clause? Which is the clause inserted within it?

Which is the antecedent? What case is it?

5. Ira furor brevis est ; animum rege, qui,  
*nisi paret, impēret.* *Hor.*

---

## THE AMPLIFICATION OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

*Compound sentences are amplified by the addition of clauses, as simple sentences are by words.*

1. Datămes Thyum agēbat.
2. Datămes, *agresti amicŭlo circumdătus*, Thyum agēbat.
3. Datămes, *agresti duplicique amicŭlo circumdătus*, Thyum agēbat.
4. Datămes, *agresti duplicique amicŭlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică*, Thyum agēbat.
5. Datămes, *agresti duplicique amicŭlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică, gerens in capite galeam venatoriam*, Thyum agēbat.
6. Datămes, *agresti duplicique amicŭlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică, gerens in capite galeam venatoriam, dextră manu clavam*, Thyum agēbat.
7. Datămes, *agresti duplicique amicŭlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică, gerens in capite galeam venatoriam, dextră manu clavam, sinistră copŭlam*, Thyum agēbat.

8. Datămes, agresti duplicique amicūlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică, gerens in capite galeam venatoriam, dextrâ manu clavam, sinistrâ copulam, *quă vinctum ante se Thyum agēbat.*

9. Datămes, agresti duplicique amicūlo circumdătus, hirtăque tunică, gerens in capite galeam venatoriam, dextrâ manu clavam, sinistrâ copulam, *quâ vinctum ante se Thyum agēbat, ut si feram bestiam captam duceret.*

*Nep.*

1. Mardonius fugātus est.

2. Mardonius, *satrăpes regius*, fugātus est.

3. Mardonius, *satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus*, fugātus est.

4. Mardonius, *satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener*, fugātus est.

5. Mardonius, *satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persarum*, fugātus est.

6. Mardonius, *satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persarum, et manu fortis*, fugātus est.

5. *In primis*, amongst the chief. 6. *Manu fortis*, brave in action.

7. Mardonius, satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persārū, et manu fortis, et *consilii plenus*, fugātus est.

8. Mardonius, satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persārū, et manu fortis, et consilii plenus, *cum ducentis millibus pedītum*, fugātus est.

9. Mardonius, satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persārū, et manu fortis, et consilii plenus, cum ducentis millibus pedītum, *quos virītīm legērat*, fugātus est.

10. Mardonius, satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persārū, et manu fortis, et consilii plenus, cum ducentis millibus pedītum, quos virītīm legērat, *et viginti millibus equītum*, fugātus est.

11. Mardonius, satrăpes regius, natiōne Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persārū, et manu fortis, et consilii plenus, cum ducentis millibus pedītum, quos virītīm legērat, et viginti millibus equītum, *haud ita magnā manu Græciā*, fugātus est.

7. *Consilii*, of good sense. 11. *Fugatus est Græciā*, was driven from Greece, *haud ita magnā manu*, by not near so great an enemy.



*When two clauses are placed at the beginning, and one at the end, the whole sentence will be,*

Illustrissimum est praelium Pausaniæ apud Plataeas ; namque, illo duce, Mardonius, satrapes regius, natione Medus, regis gener, in primis omnium Persarum, et manu fortis, et consilii plenus, cum ducentis millibus peditum, quos viritum legerat, et viginti millibus equitum, haud ita magnâ manu Græciâ, fugatus est ; eoque ipse dux cecidit praelio.

Nep.

1. Romānum imperium a Romūlo exordium habet.

2. Romānum imperium, *quo ab exordio ullum ferè minùs humana potest memoria recordāri*, a Romūlo exordium habet.

3. Romānum imperium, *quo neque ab exordio ullum ferè minùs, neque incrementis toto orbe ampliùs, humana potest memoria recordāri*, a Romūlo exordium habet.

*This is the first member of the sentence which is connected with the following by the relative qui.*

1. Qui cum Remo fratre uno partu editus est.

2. Qui, *quantum putatus est*, cum Remo fratre uno partu editus est.

3. Qui, *Vestālis virginis filius*, quantum putatus est, cum Remo fratre uno partu editus est.

4. Qui, *Vestālis virginis filius et*, quantum putatus est, *Martis*, cum Remo fratre uno partu editus est.

*The whole sentence together is —*

Romānum imperium, quo neque ab exordio ullum ferè minùs, neque incrementis toto orbe ampliùs, humāna potest memoria recordāri, a Romūlo exordium habet; qui, *Vestālis virginis filius et*, quantum putatus est, *Martis*, cum Remo fratre uno partu editus est. *Eut.*

1. Cùm, antiquitatē genēris, unus\* omnium maxīmè florēret;

2. Cùm, *et* antiquitatē genēris, *et gloriā majōrum*, unus omnium maxīmè florēret;

3. Cùm, *et* antiquitatē genēris, *et gloriā majōrum, et suā modestiā*, unus omnium maxīmè florēret;

\* The punctuation of the very correct edition of "Nepos," by the Rev. C. BRADLEY, is here adopted. *Miltiades, Cimonis filius, Atheniensis*, is a complete sentence; and *unus* agrees with *Miltiades* understood.

*Here the first member of the sentence ends: it is joined with the following by the conjunction que.*

1. Ut de eo benè sperāre cives possent sui.

2. Ut nòn jàm solùm de eo benè sperāre, sed etiam confidēre, cives possent sui.

3. Eāque esset ætāte, ut nòn jàm solùm de eo benè sperāre, sed etiam confidēre, cives possent sui.

4. Eāque esset ætāte, ut nòn jàm solùm de eo benè sperāre, sed etiam confidēre, cives possent sui, *talem futūrum, qualem cognitum judicārunt* ;

*The third member is not so involved as the two preceding members.*

1. Accīdit, ut Athenienses Chersonēsum colōnos vellent mittēre.

*The three members together, with the introductory sentence, will stand thus :—*

Miltiādes, Cimōnis filius, Atheniensis.

Cùm, et antiquitāte genēris, et gloriā majōrum, et suā modestiā, unus omnium maxīmè florēret; eāque esset ætāte, ut nōn jām solūm de eo benè sperāre, sed etiam confidēre cives possent sui, talem futūrum, qualem cognitum judicārunt; accidit, ut Athenienses Chersonēsum colōnos vellent mittēre.

*Nep. Mil.*

The Rules for construing a Compound Sentence are reduced to the following

## GENERAL RULE.

*First*, take the vocative cases with some interjections and adverbs. Then the nominative cases and words in apposition, with the relative or any other inserted clause, depending on the nominative case.

*Then*, the verb or verbs, with adverbs, infinitive moods, &c.

*After the verb*, the words governed by it, and the words in apposition, with relative or other inserted clauses depending on the word governed by the verb.

---

Is *e* in *modestia*, *a* in *maximè*, *i* in *gloria*, *omnium* and *mittere*, long or short? Why? Where is the accent in *modestia*, *maximè*, *gloria*, &c.? Why? Where in *sua*, *esset*, *solum*, &c.? Why?



## CHAPTER III.

---

### MISCELLANEOUS EXTRACTS.

#### *Of Gaul.*

Gallia<sup>1</sup> est omnis divisa in partes tres : quarum<sup>2</sup> unam incolunt Belgæ ; aliam Aquitani<sup>3</sup> ; tertiam<sup>4</sup>, qui linguâ nostrâ Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, institutis<sup>5</sup>, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen<sup>6</sup>, a Belgis Matrôna et Sequana dividit.—Una<sup>7</sup> pars, quam Gallos

1. *Omnis Gallia*, all Gaul, or France, *divisa est*, &c.  
2. *Quarum* (partium) *Belgæ incolunt unam* (partem).  
3. *Aquitani* (incolunt) *aliam* (partem). 4. (*Incolunt*), they inhabit, *tertiâ* (partem) *qui appellantur Galli nostrâ linguâ*. 5. This sentence is very clear, *et* is understood before *legibus*. 6. *Dividit* is understood (see Note 3, page 50), after *Garumna flumen*, the river Garonne. 7. *Una pars quam* (partem) *dictum est*, it has been said, *Gallos* that the Gauls, *obtinere*, possess (or inhabit), &c.
- 

What was France called by the Romans? Into how many parts was it divided? Name the parts. In what did they differ?

obtinēre dictum est, initium capit a flumīne Rhodāno; continētur<sup>8</sup> Garumnâ flumīne, Oceāno, finibus Belgārum.—*Belgæ* ab extrēmīs Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertīnent<sup>9</sup> ad inferiōrem partem fluminis Rheni.—*Aquitania* a Garumnâ flumīne ad Pyrenæos montes pertīnet. *Cæs.*

8. *Continetur*, it is bounded, *Garumnâ*, &c. 9. (*Belgæ*) *pertinent*, reach.

### *Alexander and Diogenes.*

Diogenes<sup>1</sup> Alexandro roganti, ut diceret si quid sibi opus esset, "Nunc quidem pau-

1. Alexander was the son of Philip king of Macedon. *Diogenes*, a cynic philosopher, was born in Pontus about 414 years before Christ. He was very austere in his life, and is said to have taken up his residence in a tub.

After the nominative case *Diogenes*, you look for its verb: it cannot be *diceret*, because that belongs to the clause, *ut diceret si quid sibi opus esset*, which must be taken together. You look forward in the sentence, and find *inquit*, which, not agreeing with any nominative case in the clause where it is placed, is the verb agreeing with *Diogenes*. Therefore, to find the principal verb in the sentence, is only to pass over every clause which has a nominative case and verb in it, till you come to the verb belonging to the first nominative

How was the province bounded which the *Galli* inhabited? What were the boundaries of the *Belgæ*? What was the extent of *Aquitania*?

Who was Alexander? Diogenes? How did he live? What did he say to Alexander?

lūlūm," inquit, "a sole absis." Offecērat videlicet<sup>2</sup> apricanti. Et hic quidē disputāre solēbat, quantō regem Persārum vitā fortunāque superāret. Sibi<sup>3</sup> nihil deesse; illi nihil satīs unquam fore. *Cic. Tus.*

case. You then say, *Diogenes inquit*, said, *Alexandro roganti*, to Alexander asking (him), *ut diceret*, that he would say (or to say), *si quid esset opus*, &c. 2. *Videlicet*, it appears, *offecerat*, &c. 3. *Sibi*, to himself (*Diogenes*); *illi*, to him (*Darius*, king of Persia).

### *The Temperance of the Lacedæmonians.*

Dionysius<sup>1</sup> negāvit se jure illo nigro, quod cœnæ caput erat, delectātum, Tūm is<sup>2</sup>, qui coxerat; "minīmè mirum, condimenta enim defuērunt." Quæ tandēm<sup>3</sup>, inquit ille? "Labor, sudor, cursus, fames, sitis; his enim rebus Lacedæmoniōrum epūlæ conduntur." Persārum a Xenophonte victus exponitur<sup>4</sup>, quos negat ad panem adhibere quidquam præter nasturtium. *Cic.*

1. *Dionysius negavit se*, that he, *delectatum*, was pleased, *illo jure nigro*; then construe the inserted relative clause, *quod cœnæ*, &c., which was passed over according to Observation II, page 65. 2. *Inquit*, he said, is understood after *is*, by Note 3, page 50. 3. *Tandēm*, I pray you. 4. *Exponitur*, is described.

---

For what were the Lacedæmonians remarkable? What is the best seasoning for food? What did they use instead of bread?

*Titus Pomponius Atticus.*

Atticus patre usus est<sup>1</sup> diligente, indulgente, et, ut tùm erant tempöra, diti, imprimisque studiöso literarum. Hic<sup>2</sup>, prout ipse amabat literas, omnibus doctrinis, quibus puerilis ætas impertiri debet, filium erudit. Erat autem in puëro, præter docilitatem ingenii, summa suavitas oris ac vocis, ut non solùm celeritèr accipèret, quæ tradebantur, sed etiam excellentèr pronuntiāret; quâ ex re in pueritiâ<sup>3</sup> nobilis inter æquāles ferebatur,

1. *Usus est*, had, *diligente*, a kind, *indulgente*, et, *ut tùm tempora erant*, *diti patre*. These adjectives all belong to the substantive *patre*, and are to be construed before it, by Rule IV, p. 19, and Rule II, p. 45. They are construed like accusative cases without any sign. See Introduction to Latin Construing, page 91. *Que imprimis studioso*, and particularly fond. 2. *Hic*, he, the father of Atticus, &c. In this sentence there are two inserted clauses; one of which is to be taken before the verb *erudit*, and the other after it. See Observation II, p. 65. *Hic* is known to be the nominative case to *erudit*, because in looking forward to the following clauses, each clause has a nominative case and verb, till we come to *erudit*, which has no nominative; *hic* is therefore the nominative case to the principal verb *erudit*. The sentence is then construed, *Hic*, prout ipse amabat literas, erudit filium omnibus doctrinis; then the inserted relative clause, quibus puerilis ætas debet, &c. 3. *Ferebatur*, he was considered, *nobilis*, famous, in *pueritiâ*, in childhood.

---

Of what was the father of Atticus fond? Did he instruct his son? In what? For what was Atticus remarkable?



clariùsque explendescēbat, quàm generōsi<sup>4</sup>  
condiscipŭli anīmo<sup>5</sup> æquo ferre possent ; ită-  
que incitābat omnes studio suo. *Nep.*

4. *Generosi condiscipuli*, his high-spirited school-fellows. 5. *Animo æquo*, without emulation.

### *Anacharsis the Scythian.*

An<sup>1</sup> Scythes Anacharsis potuit pro nihilo pecuniam ducere ; nostrātes philosophi facere nōn potērunt ? Illius epistōla fertur his verbis : “ Anacharsis Hannōni salūtem<sup>2</sup>. Mihi amictus est Scythicum tegmen ; calceamentum, solōrum callum ; cubile, terra ; pulpamentum, fames ; lacte, caseo, carne vescor. Quarè<sup>3</sup> ut ad quiētum me licet venias. Munera<sup>4</sup> autem ista, quibus es delectātus, vel civibus tuis, vel diis immortalibus dona.”

*Cic.*

1. *An Anacharsis Scythes potuit*, was Anacharsis the Scythian able, *ducere*, to esteem. 2. *Salutem* is governed by *mittit*, or some other verb understood. 3. *Quarè*, wherefore, *licet ut venias ad me*, to me, *quietum*, at leisure. 4. *Munera ista* may be the nominative or the accusative plural. It cannot be the nominative, because there is no plural verb to agree with it. *Munera* is, therefore, the accusative governed by *dona*, give thou.

---

Who was Anacharsis ? To whom did he write ? What was the clothing of Anacharsis ? Shoes ? Bed, &c. ?

## *A Letter from Pliny.*

CAIUS PLINIUS (1) FABIO JUSTO SUO

*Salūtem.*

Olīm nullas mihi epistōlas mittis. “Nihil est,” inquis, “quod scribam.” At hoc ipsum scribe, nihil<sup>1</sup> esse quod scribas : vel<sup>2</sup> solum illud, undè incipere priōres<sup>3</sup> solēbant, *Si vales, benè est ; ego valeo.* Hoc mihi sufficit ; est enim maxīmum. Ludere me putas : Seriò peto<sup>4</sup>. Fac sciam<sup>5</sup> quid agas : quòd

1. Caius Cæcilius Plinius Secundus, surnamed the younger, was the nephew of Pliny the elder, who wrote the Natural History, and adopted Pliny the younger for his son and heir. Cæcilius Plinius was one of the most polite gentlemen and writers of the age in which he lived. He was in so great esteem with *Trajan*, that this prince promoted him to the highest offices in the state. He was governor of *Bithynia* in *Syria*, and, at a time when *Trajan* had sent instructions to persecute the Christians of his province, he wrote to the Emperor in their favour, on which account the persecution ceased. His Epistles are written with great purity and elegance, and the reader everywhere discovers that affability, condescension, and philanthropy, which so strikingly marked the advocate of the Christians. These letters are esteemed by some equal to the voluminous epistles of Cicero. He was born at *Novo Comum* in *Italy*, and died, in the 52d year of his age, about A.D. 113.

1. *Esse*, that there is, *nihil quod scribas*. 2. *Vel (scribe) illud solum*. 3. *Priores*, ancestors. 4. *Seriò peto*, I am serious, or Believe me, I am in earnest. 5. *Fac*, take care (*ut*) *sciam*, that I may know, or inform me, *quid agas*.

---

Who was Pliny? In what age did he live? With whom was he in favour? To whom did he write? What was the result of his writing to the Emperor Trajan? Where was Pliny the younger born, and when did he die?

sine sollicitudine summâ nescire nōn possum.  
Vale.

### *On Homer.*

Traditum est Homērum cæcum fuisse. At quæ regio, quæ ora, qui locus Græciæ, quæ species formæ, quæ pugna, quæ acies, quod remigium, qui motus hominum, qui<sup>1</sup> ferarum nōn ita expictus est, ut, quæ<sup>2</sup> ipse nōn vidērit, nos ut viderēmus effecērit? Quid<sup>3</sup> ergo aut Homēro ad delectatiōnem anīmi, ac voluptātem, aut cuiquam docto, defuisse unquàm arbitrāmur? *Cic.*

1. *Qui (motus) ferarum*, &c. 2. The inserted relative clause, *quæ ipse*, &c. is not taken till the other clause, *ut effecerit nos ut videremus*, is construed. (See Observation II, page 65). 3. *Quid ergo arbitrāmur*, &c. what, therefore, do we think, &c.

### *Knowledge of Ourselves.*

Cūm, “NOSCE TE,” dicit Apollo, hoc dicit, Nosce animum tuum : nam corpus quiddē quasi vas est, aut aliquod anīmi receptaculum. Ab anīmo tuo quidquid agitur, id agitur a te. *Cic.*

---

Was Homer blind? What did he describe? Had not he much pleasure? Have not all learned men?

What did Apollo say? What is the meaning of ‘Know thyself?’ What is the body?

### *Description of the Britons.*

Britanni frumenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt : pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnes verò se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod cæruleum efficit colōrem ; atque hoc horribiliōre sunt in pugnâ adspectu : capillōque sunt promisso ; atque omni parte corpōris rasâ, præter caput et labrum superius. *Cæs.*

### *Of Britain.*

In Britanniâ homīnum est infinīta multitūdo ; pecōris magnus numērus. Utuntur aut ære, aut annūlis ferreis ad certum pondus examinātis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum<sup>1</sup> album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum<sup>2</sup> : sed ejus exigua est copia. Lepōrem et gallīnam, et ansērem gustāre fas non putant. Hæc tamen alunt, anīmi volup-

1. *Plumbum album*, lead of a white colour, or tin.

2. *Nascitur* is understood after *ferrum*.

---

Did the ancient Britons sow corn ? On what did they live ? How were they clothed ? What colour did they stain their bodies ? With what ? Why ? How did they wear their hair ? What part did they leave unshaved ? Were the ancient Britons numerous ? What substitute had they for money ? What did Britain produce ? What did they think it unlawful to eat ? Why did they keep them ?



tātisque causâ. Loca sunt temperatiōra, quàm in Galliâ; remissioribus frigoribus.

*Cæs.*

### *The Inhabitants of Gaul or France.*

In omni Galliâ, eōrum homīnum, qui<sup>1</sup> aliquo sunt numēro atque honōre, genēra sunt duo: altērum est *Druīdum*; altērum *Equitum*.

Druīdes rebus divīnis intersunt, sacrificia publicā ac privāta procūrant, religiōnes<sup>2</sup> interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numērus, disciplīnæ causâ, concurrit. Nonnulli annos vicēnos in disciplīnâ permānent. Neque fas esse existīmant, ea litēris mandāre: quòd neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferri velint; neque<sup>3</sup> eos, qui discunt, litēris confīsos, minùs memoriæ studēre: quòd ferè plerisque accidit, ut præsidio<sup>4</sup> literārum, di-

1. This inserted relative clause must not be construed till its antecedent *hominum*, &c. and the word on which *hominum* depends, have been taken. See Observation II, page 65. 2. *Interpretantur religiones* they explain their superstitions. 3. *Neque*, nor, *eos*, that those, *qui discunt*—, *confisos*, trusting, *literis*, to writing, *minus studere memoriæ*. 4. *Præsidio*, by the as-

---

What were the chief orders of men in Gaul? What was the office of the Druids? How long did some pupils remain under instruction? Did they commit their doctrines to writing? Why?

līgēntiam in perdiscendo, ac memoriā remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuadēre : nōn interīre anīmas, sed ab aliis post mortem transīre ad alios.

Altērum genus, est Equitum. Ii<sup>5</sup>, quū est usus, atque aliquod bellum incīdit, omnes in bello versantur. Atque<sup>6</sup> eōrum ut quisque est genēre copiisque amplissīmus; ita plurīmos circum se ambactos<sup>7</sup> clientesque habet. Cæs.

sistance, *literarum*, of writing, *remittant diligentiam ac memoriā in perdiscendo*. 5. *Ii omnes*, are known to be the nominative case to the verb *versantur*, because both the other clauses have verbs agreeing with their respective nominatives. 6. *Atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus genere*, &c. 7. *Ambact-us, i*, a retainer, or a superior military attendant.

### *Superstition of the Gauls.*

Natio est omnis Gallōrum admōdūm dedīta religionībus<sup>1</sup>. Atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti graviorībus morbis; aut pro victimis homīnes immōlant, aut se immolatūros vovent. Administrisque ad ea sacrificia Drui-

. *Religionibus*, to superstitions.

---

What did they particularly teach? Which was the other order of men? What was their employ?

To what were the Gauls addicted? Did they sacrifice human victims? Who officiated in these sacrifices?

dibus utuntur. Alii immāni magnitudine simulācra habent ; quorum contexta viminibus membra, vivis hominibus complent ; quibus succensis, circumventi flammâ, exanimantur homīnes. Supplicia eōrum, qui in furto, aut latrocinio, aut aliquâ noxâ sint comprehensi, gratiōra diis immortalibus esse arbitrantur ; sed quū ejus genēris copia defīcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt. Deum maxīmè Mercurium colunt<sup>2</sup> : hujus sunt plurīma simulācra : hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt : hunc viārum atque itinērum ducem : hunc ad quæstus pecuniæ mercatūrasque habēre vim maxīmam arbitrantur. Post hunc<sup>3</sup>, Apollīnem, et Martem, et Jovem, et Minervam. De his eandem ferè, quàm reliquæ gentes, habent opiniōnem : Apollīnem morbos depellere ; Minervam opērum atque artificiōrum initia transdēre ; Jovem imperium cælestium tenēre ; Martem bella regere. *Cæs.*

2. *Colunt*, they worship. 3. *Hunc*, Mercury governed by *ferunt* understood.

---

Describe the manner in which the victims were burned. What was the name of their chief god ? Whom did the Gauls consider as the inventor of arts ? What god did they hold in esteem next to Mercury ? Over what is Apollo said to preside ? What Minerva ? What Jupiter ? Mars ?

## *The Battle of Marathon.*

Dari<sup>1</sup>us autem, cū ex Eurōpā in Asiā redisset, hortantibus amicis, ut Græciam in suam redigere<sup>t</sup> potestatem, classem quingentarum navium comparavit, ei<sup>que</sup> Datim præfecit, et Artaphernem; hisque<sup>2</sup> ducenta pedītum millia, et decem equitum dedit. Præfecti<sup>3</sup> regii, classe ad Eubœam<sup>4</sup> appulsâ, celeritèr Eretriam<sup>5</sup> cepērunt; omnesque ejus gentis cives, abreptos in Asiā, ad regem misērunt.

Indè ad Atticam<sup>6</sup> accessērunt, ac suas copias in campum Marathōna<sup>7</sup> deduxērunt.

1. *Darius*, king of Persia. *Darius* is the nominative case to *comparavit*, which is not construed till the three intervening clauses are construed according to preceding Rules. *Ille*, he (*Darius*), is the nominative case understood to all the verbs in that member of the sentence. 2. *Que*, and, *dedit*, he (*Darius*) gave. 3. Attention should be paid to the inserted clauses in this sentence. 4. *Eubœam*, Eubœa, a large island in the Ægean sea. 5. *Eretriam*, Eretria, a town in the island of Eubœa. 6. *Atticam*, Attica, a country of Greece. 7. *Marathona* (the Greek accusative case),

---

Who was Darius? What fleet did he fit out? What was the number of horse? Of the foot? To whom did he give the command? To what part did they sail? Where is Eubœa? What town did they take? In what plain did the Persians draw up their army? Where is Marathon?



Is<sup>8</sup> abest ab oppido circiter millia passuum decem. Hoc tumultu, Athenienses<sup>9</sup>, tam propinquo tamquæ magno permoti, auxilium nusquam, nisi a Lacedæmoniis<sup>10</sup>, petiverunt. Domi autem creati decem prætores, qui exercitui præessent; in eis, Miltiades. Hôc in tempore, nulla civitas Atheniensibus auxilio fuit præter Platæenses: ea mille misit militum. Itaque horum adventu, decem millia armatorum complêta sunt, quæ manus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate.

Deindè postero die sub montis radicibus, acie e regione instructâ, novâ arte, vi summâ prælium commiserunt. Namque arbores multis locis erant stratae, hôc consilio, ut et montium tegerentur altitudine, et arborum tractu<sup>11</sup> equitatus hostium impedirêtur, nè multitudinè clauderentur. Datis, etsi non

of *Marathon*, a village in Attica. 8. *Is*, that (plain). 9. *Athenienses*, the inhabitants of Athens, the most celebrated city of Greece. 10. *Lacedæmoniis*, the inhabitants of Lacedæmon, or Sparta, in Greece. 11. *Tractu arborum*, by the laying of trees.

---

Who were the Athenians? Who was chosen their general? Who assisted the Athenians? Who were the Lacedæmonians? Point out Marathon, Athens, and Lacedæmon on the map. How many men had the Athenians? What scheme did the Athenians adopt to prevent the Persians surrounding them?

locum æquum vidēbat suis, tamen fretus numēro copiārum suārum, configēre cupiēbat; eoque magis, quòd, priusquàm Lacedæmonii subsidio venīrent, dimicāre utile arbitrabātur.

Itaque in aciem pedītum centum, equitum decem millia produxit, præliumque commisit. In quo tantò plūs virtūte valuērunt Athenienses, ut decemplīcem numērum hostium profligārent, adeoque perterruērunt, ut Persæ nōn castra, sed naves, petērent. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc est nobilius; nulla enim unquàm tām exigua manus tantas opes prostrāvit.

*Nep.*

### *Introduction to Sallust.*

Omnis<sup>1</sup> homīnes, qui sese student præstāre cætēris animalibus, summā ope niti de-

1. *Sallust*, a Roman historian, was born at Amiturnum in Italy. He died about thirty-four years before Christ. *Omnis* is put for *omnes*, the accusative case plural. *Omnis*, or *omnes homīnes*, is either the nominative or accusative plural; the construction of the sentence must determine. *Homīnes*, here, is evidently the accusative governed by *decet*. After *Decet omnis homīnes*, you take the relative clause, *qui sese*

---

How many soldiers did Datis lead to battle? What number of the enemy did the Athenians rout? To what place did the Persians retreat?

Who was Sallust? Where was he born? What ought

cet, nè vitam silentio transeant<sup>2</sup>, velūt pecōra, quæ natūra prona, atque ventri obedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vis in anīmo et corpore sita est: anīmi imperio<sup>3</sup>, corpōris servitio magis utimur: altērum nobis cum dīs, altērum cum belluis commūne est. <sup>4</sup>Quò mihi rectiūs vidētur, ingenii, quàm virium opībus gloriā quærere; et quoniam vita ipsa, quā fruimur, brevis est, memoriā nostri quàm maxumè longam<sup>5</sup> efficere. Nam divitiārum et formæ gloria, fluxa atque fragilis est; virtus clara, æternāque habetur.

*Sal.*

*student, &c.* See Observation II, p. 65. Then *niti summâ ope*. 2. *Nè transeant*, that they should not pass, &c. 3. *Magis utimur*, we generally employ, *imperio*, the authority, rule, or power, *anīmi*, of the mind (*et*, and), *servitio*, the service, *corpōris*. 4. *Quò*, for which cause, or wherefore, *videtur rectiūs mihi quærere gloriā opibus*, by the power, *ingenii quàm*, than, *virium*, of strength. 5. *Videtur rectiūs* is understood before *efficere*, to make, *memoriā nostri*, our memory, *quàm maxumè longam*, as lasting as possible. *Maxumè* is put for *maximè*.

---

man to do? After what do cattle seek? In what is our ability seated? What have we in common with the brutes? What with God? What is the conclusion? What should we do, since life is short? What is fleeting? What is durable?

*Pliny's<sup>1</sup> Account of the Primitive Christians.*

CAIUS PLINIUS TRAJANO IMPERATORI

*Salūtem.*

Christiāni affirmābant, hanc fuisse summam vel culpæ suæ, vel errōris, quòd essent soliti stato die ante lucem convenire: carmenque<sup>2</sup> Christo, quasi Deo, dicere secum invicem; seque<sup>3</sup> sacramento non in scelus aliquod obstringere, sed nè furta, nè latrocinia, nè adulteria committerent, nè fidem fallerent, nè depositum appellati abnegarent: quibus peractis morem sibi discedendi fuisse, rursusque coeundi ad capiendum cibum, promiscuum tamen, et innoxium: quod ipsum facere desisset post edictum meum, quo secundum mandata tua hetærias esse vetuëram. Quò magis necessariam credidi, ex duabus ancillis, quæ ministræ<sup>4</sup> dicebantur, quid esset

1. For an account of Pliny, see page 80, note 1.  
 2. *Que*, and (*soliti essent*, they were accustomed), *dicere invicem secum carmen Christo*, &c. 3. *Que* (*soliti essent*) *non obstringere se sacramento in aliquod scelus, sed nè committerent*, &c. 4. These females, like Phœbe, most

---

Who was Pliny? At what time did he live? What did the first Christians say to Pliny about themselves? How did they worship Christ? Why did they bind themselves by an oath? Did they obey the edict of Pliny? Were two females put to the rack? Did Christianity



veri et per tormenta quærere. Sed nihil aliud invēni, quàm superstitiōnem pravam et immodicam, ideōque, dilāta cognitiōne, ad consulendum te decurri. Visa est enim mihi res digna consultatiōne, maxīmè propter periclitantium numērum. Multi enim omnis ætātis, omnis ordinis, utriusque sexûs etiam, vocantur in pericūlum, et vocabuntur. Neque enim civitātes tantūm, sed vicos etiam atque agros superstitiōnis istius contagio pervagāta est. *Plin.*

probably not only attended to the poor and sick, but to all the females who came to worship God.

### *A Scene from Terence<sup>1</sup>.*

#### SPEAKERS.

*Demea, an old man, and father to Æschinus.*

*Æschinus, a youth, son of Demea.*

*Syrus, servant to Æschinus.*

*Micio, an old man, brother to Demea.*

*Sy.* Factum est, quod jussisti, Demea.

1. Terence was a native of Carthage in Africa; he was celebrated for his comedies, and is said to have died about 159 years before the Christian æra. Begin with

---

spread when its professors were persecuted? Did it extend to villages as well as towns?

Where was Terence born? At what time is he said to have died?

*De.* Frugi homo es<sup>2</sup>. Ego<sup>3</sup> hodiè, meâ quidèm sententiâ, judico, Syrum fieri, esse æquum, liberum?

*Mi.* Istunc liberum? quodnam ob factum?

*De.* Multa<sup>4</sup>.

*Sy.* O noster Demea, vir bonus est: ego istos vobis usque a puëris curâvi ambos sedulò; docui, monui, benè præcēpi sempèr, quæ potui, omnia.

*De.* Res appāret.

*Sy.* O lepīdum<sup>5</sup> caput!

*De.* Prodesse æquum est: alii meliōres erunt. Postrēmò hic<sup>6</sup> vult fieri.

*Mi.* Visne tu hoc fieri?

*Æs.* Cupio.

*Mi.* Si quidèm tu vis; Syre eho, accēde hūc ad me, liber esto.

*Sy.* Benè facis. Omnībus gratiam habeo<sup>7</sup>, et seorsum tibi prætereà, Demea.

*De.* Gaudeo.

*Æs.* Et ego.

*Sy.* Credo. Utinàm<sup>8</sup> hoc perpetuum fiat

the vocative case *Demea*. 2. *Es frugi homo*. 3. *Ego judico hodiè, meâ sententiâ quidèm, esse, that it is, æquum, Syrum fieri liberum*. 4. (*Ob*) *multa (facta)*. 5. *O lepīdum caput!* O charming fellow! 6. *Hic (Æschinus) vult, wishes it, fieri, to be done*. 7. *Habeo, I give, gratiam, my acknowledgement or thanks, omnibus, to all, et prætereà tibi seorsum, Demea*. 8. *Utinàm hoc gau-*

gaudium, Phrygiam ut uxōrem meam unā  
mecum videam libēram.

*De.* Optīmam quidēm muliērem, a me<sup>9</sup>  
argentum, quanti est, sumīto.

*Sy.* Dii<sup>10</sup> tibi, Demea, omnes semp̄r om-  
nia optāta offērant.

*Mi.* Syre, processisti hodiē pulchrē.

*De.* Si quidēm porrò, Micio, tu tuum  
officiū facies, atque huic aliquid paulūlum  
præ manu dedēris, undē utātur : reddet tibi  
citò.

*Mi.* Istūc vilius.

*Æs.* Frugi homo est.

*Sy.* Reddam herclē : da modò.

*Æs.* Age, pater.

*Mi.* Pòst consūlam<sup>11</sup>.

*De.* Faciet.

*Sy.* O vir optīme.

*Æs.* O pater mi festivissīme.

*Mi.* Quid istuc ? quæ res tām repentē  
mores mutāvit tuos ?

*De.* Dicam tibi, si voltis<sup>12</sup>, quæ vos prop-  
ter adolescentiam minùs vidētis, magis im-

*dium fiat perpetuum, ut videam meam uxorem Phrygiam  
liberam unā cum me. 9. Sumito argentum a me, quanti  
(pretii) est. 10. Demea, omnes dii, may all the gods,  
semp̄r offerant omnia optata tibi. 11. Pòst consulam  
(de hác re). 12. Voltis for vultis.*

pensè cupītis, consulītis parùm, hæc reprehendere et corrigere me; ecce me, qui id faciam vobis.

*Æs.* Tibi, pater, permittimus: plus scis, quid facto opus est.

*Æs.* Istuc rectè<sup>13</sup>. Plaudite<sup>14</sup>.

*Ter. Adel.* act. v, sc. 7.

13. *Istuc rectè*, that is well. 14. Speaking to the spectators, he says, *Plaudite*, clap your hands, or give us your applause.

### *Of Hope.*

Spes alit agricolas, spes sulcis credit arātis  
 Semina, quæ magno fœnore reddat ager.  
 Hæc<sup>1</sup> laqueo volucres, hæc captat arundine  
 pisces,

Cùm tenues hamos abdidit antè cibus.  
 Spes etiam validâ solatur compede vinctum.  
 Crura sonant ferro, sed canit inter opus.

*Tib.*

1. *Hæc*, hope.

### *Of Beauty.*

Forma bonum fragile est: quantumque accedit ad annos

---

To what does hope encourage the farmer? Birds? Fishes? What supports a man in bonds?



Fit minor, et spatium<sup>1</sup> carpitur ipsa suo.  
 Nec violæ sempër, nec hiantia lilia florent ;  
 Et riget amissâ spina relictâ rosâ.  
 Et tibi jam cani venient, formose, capilli ;  
 Jam venient rugæ, quæ tibi corpus arent.  
 Jam molire<sup>2</sup> animum, qui duret, et adstrue  
 formæ :

Solus ad extrêmos permănet ille rogos.

*Ov.*

1. *Spatio suo*, by its continuance. 2. *Jam molire*, now cultivate.

### *A Storm.*

Me miserum, quanti montes volvuntur aquarum !

Jam jam tacturos sidera summa putes.  
 Quantæ diducto subsidunt æquore valles !  
 Jam jam tacturos Tartara nigra putes.  
 Quocunque aspicias, nihil est nisi pontus et  
 aër ;  
 Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax.

Is beauty durable ? How is it destroyed ? What is said of the violet ? Rose ? If beauty be so transient, what ought you to do ? Why ought you to cultivate the mind ?

In the storm, how high were they raised ? The water being removed, how low were they brought ? What could be only seen ?

Inter utrumque fremunt immāni turbīne  
venti.

Nescit, cui domīno pareat, unda maris.

*Ov.*

### *Of Delay.*

— — — — — Cur,  
Quæ lædunt oculos, festīnas demēre ; si<sup>1</sup>  
quid

Est anīmum, differs curandi tempus in an-  
num ?

Dimidium facti, qui cœpit, habet. Sapēre<sup>2</sup>  
aude :

Incīpe. Vivendi rectè qui prorōgat horam,  
Rusticus<sup>3</sup> expectat dūm defluat amnis ; at  
ille<sup>4</sup>

Labitur, et labētur in omne volubilis ævum.

*Hor.*

1. *Si est quid (quod lædit) animum, differs, &c.* 2. *Aude, dare, sapere, to be wise : incipe, begin.* 3. *(Is est ut) rusticus, he is like the rustic (qui, who), expectat dūm, &c.* 4. *Ille, the river.*

---

What is said of the wind ? Of the water ?

Do you not desire to remove any thing which gives pain to the eyes ? Should you not do so with the mind ? When may you be said to have half done ? He who puts off reformation is like what ? Will the rustic's expectation be answered ? Why will it not ? Why is he who defers reformation like the rustic ?

*Introduction to Phædrus' Fables.*

Æsōpus<sup>1</sup> auctor, quam<sup>2</sup>, materiam repērit

Hanc, ego polīvi versibus senariis.

Duplex libelli dos<sup>3</sup> est; quòd risum movet,

Et quòd prudenti vitam<sup>4</sup> consilio monet.

Calumniāri si quis autem voluērit,

Quòd arbōres loquantur, nōn tantūm feræ,

Fictis jocāri nos meminērit fabūlis. *Phæd.*

1. *Æsopus*, *Æsop*, was originally a Phrygian slave. He was a most deformed, but very wise man, and obtained his freedom on account of his genius. He lived about 500 years before our Saviour, and excelled in conveying instruction by fables, written in Greek prose. *Phædrus*, a Thracian slave, flourished about A. D. 20, and received his freedom from the Emperor Tiberius Cæsar. The fables of *Phædrus* are distinguished for their simplicity and elegance. What *Æsop* had written in Greek prose, *Phædrus* translated into easy and elegant Latin iambic verse.

*Auctor* is put in apposition with *Æsopus*, and, therefore, they are construed together. 2. *Quam*, referring to *materiam*, is taken after it, when the first clause is finished; by Rule V, Observation II, p. 65. The next clause is then *quam ego polivi versibus senariis*, in verses of six feet. 3. *Dos*, the use. 4. *Monet vitam*, it directs our conduct.

---

Who was *Æsop*? *Phædrus*? Who was the inventor of these fables? Who wrote them in Latin verse? What is the use of these fables? What reason does he give for supposing trees and beasts to speak?

*Brother and Sister.*

Præcepto<sup>1</sup> monitus, sæpè te considëra.  
 Habēbat quidam filiam turpissimam,  
 Idemque insigni et pulchrâ facie filium<sup>2</sup>.  
 Hi specŭlum, in cathedrâ matris ut positum  
     fuit,  
 Puerilitèr ludentes, fortè inspexërant.  
 Hic<sup>3</sup> se<sup>4</sup> formōsum jactat; illa irascitur,  
 Nec glorientis sustinet fratris jocos,  
 Accipiens (quid enim?<sup>5</sup>) cuncta in contume-  
     liam.  
 Ergo ad patrem decurrit, læsūra<sup>6</sup> invicem,  
 Magnâque invidiâ criminâtur filium,  
 Vir<sup>7</sup> natus quòd rem fœminârûm tetigërit.  
 Amplexus ille utrumque, et carpens oscŭla,

1. *Monitus (hoc) præcepto*, warned by this precept, or fable. 2. *Filium* is governed by *habebat* understood. See Rule II, Note 3, p. 50. 3. *Hic*, the latter, the son. 4. *Se*, that he (*esse*). See Rule V, Note 3, p. 29. 5. *Enim quid?* for what else could she do? 6. *Læsura invicem*, to vex him in her turn. 7. *Natus vir*, being born a male.

---

What should a person often do who reads this fable? How many children had the person? Which was the handsomer? With what was the sister vexed? What did she do?



Dulcemque in ambos caritātem partiens,  
 “Quotidiè,” inquit, “specūlo vos uti volo :  
 Tu<sup>8</sup> formam ne corrumpas nequitiae malis ;  
 Tu<sup>9</sup> faciem ut istam moribus vincas bonis.”

*Phæd.*

8. *Tu (fili)* you (my son). 9. *Tu (filia)* you (my daughter).

*Introduction to Ovid's<sup>1</sup> Metamorphosis.*

In nova fert animus<sup>2</sup> mutātas dicere formas  
 Corpōra. Dī<sup>3</sup>, cœptis, nam vos mutāstis et  
 illas,  
 Aspirāte meis ; primāque ab origine mundi,  
 Ad mea perpetuum deducite<sup>4</sup> tempōra car-  
 men.

1. *Ovid*, a Roman poet, was born at Sulmo, in Italy, about forty years before Christ. 2. *Animus fert*, my mind proposes, or, I intend, *dicere formas*, &c. 3. *Dī*, O ye gods, as the vocative case is taken first, then you pass over the clause *nam vos*, &c. ; there is no nominative case to *aspirate* ; you therefore supply it by a pronoun of the second person, and say, do you favour, *cœptis meis* ; now the next clause, *nam vos mutāstis*, &c. 4. *Deducite*, draw forth, *perpetuum carmen*, an unin-

---

What did the father say to his son ? To his daughter ? What may all learn from this fable ?

Who was Ovid ? Where was he born ? At what time ? What does Ovid say in the first sentence ? Whose assistance does he then invoke ?

Ante mare<sup>5</sup>, et terras, et, quod tegit omnia,  
cælum,

Unus erat toto natūræ vultus in orbe,  
Quem dixēre Chaos, rudis indigestaque  
moles ;

Nec<sup>6</sup> quicquam nisi pondus iners, congestă-  
que eōdēm

Nōn benè junctārum discordia semīna rerum.  
Nullus adhūc mundo præbēbat lumīna  
Titan<sup>7</sup> ;

Nec nova crescendo reparābat cornua Phœbe<sup>7</sup> ;  
Nec circumfūso<sup>8</sup> pendēbat in aëre tellus,  
Ponderībus librāta suis ; nec brachia longo  
Margīne terrārum porrexerat<sup>9</sup> Amphitrīte ;

interrupted, &c. 5. Begin with *Ante mare, et*, &c. ; after *cælum*, take the inserted relative clause *quod tegit omnia*. After the next clause, take *quem*, which, *dixēre*, they, &c. *Rudisque indigesta moles*, an unformed and confused mass. 6. Having construed the first member, you proceed with this : *Nec (erat) quicquam nisi iners pondus, que discordia semina rerum nōn benè junctarum que eodēm congesta*. 7. *Titan*, the sun ; *Phœbe*, the moon. 8. *In aëre circumfuso*, in air surrounding it. 9. *Nec Amphitrīte*, nor had the sea, *porrexerat*, &c.

---

What was the first appearance of the world ? What was it called ? Was there any sun ? What was he called ? What name does Ovid give the moon ? How was the earth supported ? What was the sea called ?

Quàque fuit tellus, illic et pontus et aër.  
 Sic erat instabilis tellus, innabilis<sup>10</sup> unda,  
 Lucis egens aër. Nulli sua forma manēbat;  
 Obstābatque aliis aliud<sup>11</sup>, quia corpore in uno  
 Frigida<sup>11</sup> pugnābant calidis, humentia<sup>12</sup> siccis,  
 Mollia cum duris, sine pondere habentia  
 pondus. Ov.

*Que* and *quà*, where, *fuit tellus, illic et pontus et aër*.  
 10. In this and the following clause, *erat* is understood.  
 See Rule II, Note 2, p. 16. 11. See Rule IV, Note 1,  
 p. 23. 12. See Rule II, Note 3, p. 50.

### *Introduction to the Æneid of Virgil<sup>1</sup>.*

Arma, virumque cano, Trojæ<sup>2</sup> qui primus ab  
 oris

Italiam, fato profūgus, Lavīnæque<sup>3</sup> venit  
 Litōra: multū ille<sup>4</sup> et terris jactātus et alto,

1. Virgil, the prince of Latin poets, was born at Mantua, in the north of Italy, about sixty-nine years before Christ. After the first clause *cano arma que virum*, take the relative clause, *qui, profugus fato, primus venit ab oris Trojæ* (in) *Italiam que Lavina litōra*. 2. *Trojæ*, of Troy, a city of Asia Minor. 3. *Lavina*, of Lavinia, or Italy. Italy was called Lavinia, from Lavinia the daughter of king Latinus. 4. *Ille*, he,

---

How are the earth and water described? What is said of things possessing different qualities, as cold, heat, &c.?

Who was Virgil? Where and when was he born? Who is particularly described in the Æneid? Where is Troy? Was Æneas tossed about?

Vi supĕrŭm, sævæ memōrem Junōnis ob  
iram :

Multa quoquē et bello passus<sup>5</sup>, dŭm condĕret  
urbem,

Inferretque Deos Latio ; genus undē Latī-  
num<sup>6</sup>,

Albānīque patres, atque altæ mœnia Romæ.

Musa<sup>7</sup>, mihi causas memōra, quo numīne  
læso,

Quidve dolens Regīna Deŭm, tot volvēre  
casus

Insignem pietāte virum, tot adīre labōres

Impulĕrit. Tantæne<sup>8</sup> anīmis cælestībus iræ ?

(Æneas) *multum jactatus (fuit) et terris, &c.* 5. *Et passus (est) quoque multa bello, dum, &c.* 6. *Unde (est) genus Latinum, &c.* 7. *Musa, O muse, memora, call to mind, causas mihi, then the relative clause quo, &c. ; after that take quidve Regina Deum dolens, impulerit virum insignem pietate volvere tot casus, adire, &c.* 8. *Tantæne iræ (sunt), &c.*

---

By whose rage ? Does Virgil invoke the muse ? For what ? What is the question he asks ?



## CHAPTER IV.

---

### *The Roman Calendar.*

A year is that space of time which elapses before the same season returns. By the Romans, the year was divided into twelve moons or months : these, originally, had no appropriate names, but were distinguished by their order of succession : as, the *first* moon, or month ; the *second* moon, or month, &c. In process of time, the months were designated, according to the names of some imaginary deity which they worshipped at the time, or according to the character of the season.

---

What is a year? How did the Romans divide the year? How were the months named at first? How afterwards?

In the annexed Table will be seen the names and order of the months, in the time of Romulus and Julius Cæsar.

In the time of Romulus, about 750 years before Christ.	Days in each Month.	In the time of Julius Cæsar, about 47 years before Christ.	Days in each Month.	Reason of the Names.
1. Martius ....	31	Januarius, i, m. 2. & adj. ....	31	In honour of Janus, the God of Time. <i>Februo</i> , to purify; the Romans now prepared for sacrifice. In honour of Mars, the God of War. <i>Aprilio</i> , to open: then the buds begin to open and expand. <i>A Majoribus</i> , in honour of the Elders or Senators. <i>A Junioribus</i> , in honour of young people. In honour of Julius Cæsar. In honour of Augustus Cæsar. From the order in which they stood in the old Calendar, or in this, when Januarius or Februarius are omitted. They would then be the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th months, as their names import.
2. Aprilis ....	30	Februarius, i, m. 2. & adj. ....	28	
3. Maius ....	31	Martius, i, m. 2. & adj. ....	31	
4. Junius ....	30	Aprilis, is, m. 3. & adj. ....	30	
5. Quintilis ..	31	Maius, i, m. 2. & adj. ....	31	
6. Sextilis ....	30	Junius, i, m. 2. & adj. ....	30	
7. September ..	30	Quintilis (Julius, i, m. 2. & adj) ...	31	
8. October ....	31	Sextilis (Augustus, i, m. 2. & adj) ..	31	
9. November ..	30	September, ris, m. 3. & adj. ....	30	
10. December ..	30	October, ris, m. 3. & adj. ....	31	
11. Anonymous	33	November, ris, m. 3. & adj. ....	30	
12. Anonymous	23	December, ris, m. 3. & adj. ....	31	

Why was the first month in the time of Romulus called Martius? The fifth Quintilis?  
The sixth Sextilis? &c.

## THE ALTERATION OF THE CALENDAR, &amp;c.

Julius Cæsar, by the assistance of Sosi-gènes, an astronomer of Alexandria, adapted these lunar months to the course of the sun. Each month had the same number of days assigned to it, as at the present time. The year thus divided was called the Julian year.

The months, among the Romans, were not divided into weeks \*, but into three unequal parts, called Calends, Nones, and Ides. The first day of every month was called Calends, (*Calendæ*, *ārum*, pl. f. 1. a *calendo*) because the appearance of a new moon was called, or proclaimed to the people. The Nones (*Nonæ*, *ārum*, pl. f. 1.) were so named, be-

---

Who assisted Julius Cæsar in reforming the Calendar? What countryman was he? What number of days was assigned to each month? How were the months divided? What was the first day called? Why called Calends? Why were the next days called Nones?

---

\* "The custom of dividing time into weeks (*hebdomādes*, v.—*dæ*, vel *septimānæ*) was introduced under the Emperors. Dio, who flourished under Severus, about A. D. 230, says, xxxvii, 18, it took place a little before his time, being derived from the Egyptians; and universally prevailed. The days of the week were named from the planets, as they still remain: *Dies Solis*, Sunday; *Dies Lunæ*, Monday; *Dies Martis*, Tuesday; *Dies Mercurii*, Wednesday; *Dies Jovis*, Thursday; *Dies Venëris*, Friday; *Dies Saturni*, Saturday. See Adam's Roman Antiquities, p. 303.

cause, counting inclusively, they were nine days from the Ides.

The month is nearly divided by the Ides, (*Idus*, uum, pl. f. 4.) so called from the obsolete word *iduāre*, to divide.

1. The Calends are the 1st day of every month.

2. The Nones are on the 7th of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, and on the 5th of all the other months.

3. The Ides are always eight days after the Nones ; and, therefore, fall on the 15th of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, and on the 13th of the rest.

All that is necessary to be remembered is contained in these lines :

Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse Calendas.  
 Sex *Maius* Nonas, *Octōber*, *Julius* et *Mars*.  
 Quatuor at reliqui ; dabit Idus quilibet octo.  
 The *first* day of the month they *Calends* call,  
 May, March, October, July, *six* Nones fall ;  
 In th' other eight months, *four : eight Ides*  
 in all.

---

Why was the other division of the month called Ides ?  
 When are the Calends ? When are the Nones in  
 March, May, July, and October ? When in the other  
 months ? When are the Ides in March, &c. ? When in  
 the other months ?



## *On reckoning the Days of the Month.*

In reckoning the days of their months, the Romans counted backwards.

1. The Nones came after the Calends, or the 1st of the month ; and, counting backwards, they called January 2d *Quarto Nonas Januarias*, or *Januarii* ; or *Quarto Nonarum Januarii*, and by contraction IV. *Non. Jan.* (as in the Table), and so on backward ; *Tertio, Pridie* to the 5th of January, which was called *Nonis Januariis*, or *Januarii* ; or *Nonæ Januarii* ; by contraction *Non. Jan.*

2. The Ides follow the Nones, and they are also counted backwards. The sixth of January is denominated *Octāvo Idus Januarias* or *Januarii*, or *Octāvo Iduum Januarii*, and by contraction, VIII. *Id. Jan.* (as in the Table) ; proceeding backwards, *septīmo, sexto, quinto, &c.* to the 13th of January, which was called *Idibus Januariis*, or *Januarii*, or *Idus Januarii*.

3. The Calends were the third division, and always belonged to the following month ; for instance, the 14th of January was denominated the XIX. Cal. Feb. or in full, *Decīmo nono Calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*, or *Decīmo nono Calendarum Februarii*. This retrograde numbering was carried backward, *Decīmo octāvo, Decīmo septīmo, Decīmo sexto, &c.* to the 30th of January, which was denominated III. Cal. Feb. that is, the 3d day before the Calends, or calling of the moon, on the first of February. The 31st of January was called *Pridie Calendas Februarias*, &c. ; that is, the day before they proclaimed the first appearance of the moon for February.

*The following Table will not only show how the Romans divided their months, but that they used the names of the months both as nouns and adjectives.*

---

How did the Romans reckon ? - Explain the method of reckoning the Nones by the Table. Then the Ides ; and, lastly, the Calends.

# A TABLE OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

To save room, the Date is expressed in full only in Col. I, but there can be no difficulty in supplying it in the other columns, as they may be all expressed in full like the first.

COL. I. Januarius, Augustus, et December.		COL. II. Aprilis, Junius, September, November.	COL. III. Martius, Maius, Julius, October.	COL. IV. Februarius.	Days of the Month.
Cal. Jan.	Calendis Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	Cal. AP. JUN. [SEP. <i>vel</i> NOV.]	Cal. MAR. MA. [JUL. <i>vel</i> OCT.]	Cal. Feb.	1
IV. NON. JAN.	Quarto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Nonas Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	IV. NON. APR.	VI. NON. MAR.	IV. NON. FEB.	2
III. Non. Jan.	Tertio ( <i>die ante</i> ) Nonas Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	III. Non. Apr.	V. Non. Mar.	III. Non. Feb.	3
Prid. Non. Jan.	Pridie ( <i>ante</i> ) Nonas Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	Prid. Non. Apr.	IV. Non. Mar.	Prid. Non. Feb.	4
Non. Jan.	<i>vel</i> Pridie Nonarum Januarii.	Non. Apr.	III. Non. Mar.	Non. Feb.	5
VIII. ID. JAN.	Nonis Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	VIII. ID. APR.	Prid. Non. Mar.	VIII. ID. FEB.	6
VII. Id. Jan.	Octavo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	VII. Id. Apr.	Non. Mar.	VII. Id. Feb.	7
VI. Id. Jan.	<i>vel</i> Sexto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	VI. Id. Apr.	VIII. ID. MAR.	VI. Id. Feb.	8
V. Id. Jan.	Septimo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	V. Id. Apr.	VII. Id. Mar.	V. Id. Feb.	9
IV. Id. Jan.	<i>vel</i> Sexto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	IV. Id. Apr.	VI. Id. Mar.	IV. Id. Feb.	10
III. Id. Jan.	Quinto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	III. Id. Apr.	V. Id. Mar.	III. Id. Feb.	11
Prid. Id. Jan.	Tertio ( <i>die ante</i> ) Idus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	Prid. Id. Apr.	IV. Id. Mar.	Prid. Id. Feb.	12
Id. Jan.	<i>vel</i> Pridie Iduum Januarii.	Id. Apr.	III. Id. Mar.	Id. Feb.	13
XIX. CAL. FEB.	Idibus Januariis <i>vel</i> Januarii.	XVIII. CAL. MA. JUL. [OCT. <i>vel</i> DEC.]	Prid. Id. Mar.	XVI. CAL. [MAR.]	14
	<i>vel</i> Idus Januariæ <i>vel</i> Januarii.				
	Decimo nono ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendas Februariis <i>vel</i> Februarii.				
	<i>vel</i> Decimo nono ( <i>die</i> ) Calendarum FEBRUARIi,				
	SEPTEMBRI <i>vel</i> JANUARIi.				

XVIII. Cal. Feb.	Decimo octavo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	XVII. Cal. Ma.	Id. Mar.	XV. Cal. Mar.	15
XVII. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Decimo octavo ( <i>die</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	XVI. Cal. Ma.	XVII. CAL. AP.	XIV. Cal. Mar.	16
XVI. Cal. Feb.	Decimo septimo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	XV. Cal. Ma.	JUN. AUG. <i>v. Nov.</i>	XIII. Cal. Mar.	17
XV. Cal. Feb.	Decimo sexto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	XIV. Cal. Ma.	XVI. Cal. Apr.	XII. Cal. Mar.	18
XIV. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Decimo quinto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	XIII. Cal. Ma.	XV. Cal. Apr.	XI. Cal. Mar.	19
XIII. Cal. Feb.	Decimo quarto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	XII. Cal. Ma.	XIV. Cal. Apr.	X. Cal. Mar.	20
XII. Cal. Feb.	Decimo tertio ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	XI. Cal. Ma.	XIII. Cal. Apr.	IX. Cal. Mar.	21
XI. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Decimo tertio ( <i>die</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	X. Cal. Ma.	XII. Cal. Apr.	VIII. Cal. Mar.	22
X. Cal. Feb.	Undecimo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	IX. Cal. Ma.	XI. Cal. Apr.	VII. Cal. Mar.	23
IX. Cal. Feb.	Decimo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	VIII. Cal. Ma.	X. Cal. Apr.	VI. Cal. Mar.*	24
VIII. Cal. Feb.	Nono ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	VII. Cal. Ma.	IX. Cal. Apr.	V. Cal. Mar.	25
VII. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Nono ( <i>die</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	VI. Cal. Ma.	VIII. Cal. Apr.	IV. Cal. Mar.	26
VI. Cal. Feb.	Octavo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	V. Cal. Ma.	VII. Cal. Apr.	III. Cal. Mar.	27
V. Cal. Feb.	Septimo ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	IV. Cal. Ma.	VI. Cal. Apr.	Prid. Cal. Mar.	28
IV. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Septimo ( <i>die</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	III. Cal. Ma.	V. Cal. Apr.		29
III. Cal. Feb.	Sexto ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.	Prid. Cal. MA.	IV. Cal. Apr.		30
Prid. Cal. Feb.	<i>vel</i> Sexto ( <i>die</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.	JUL. OCT. <i>vel</i> DEC.	III. Cal. Apr.		31
	Tertio ( <i>die ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.		Prid. Cal. APR.		
	<i>vel</i> Tertio ( <i>die</i> ) Calendarum Februarii.		JUN. AUG. <i>vel</i> NOV.		
	Pridie ( <i>ante</i> ) Calendae Februarias <i>vel</i> Februarii.				
	<i>vel</i> Pridie Calendarum FEBRUARI, — SEPTEMBRI <i>vel</i> JANUARI.				

\* In Leap-Year February has 29 days. The Romans marked both the 24th and 25th of this Month *Scito Calendarum Martias*, or *Martii*; and hence this Year is called *Bissexatilis*.



## OBSERVATIONS.

It will be seen, by comparing the following extracts with the preceding Table, that the Romans had *four* and sometimes *five* ways of constructing that part of a sentence which expressed the date of any transaction. *First*, using the name of the month as an adjective, they said *Quarto Nonas Januarias*; *Quarto* agreeing with *die* understood, and *Nonas* being governed by *ante* understood, as in the Table. *Secondly*, using the name of the month as a noun, it would be *Quarto Nonas Januarii*; *Quarto* agreeing with *die* understood, and *Nonas* being governed by *ante* as in the *first*, and *Januarii* a noun in the genitive case governed by *Nonas*. *Thirdly*, with two genitive cases: as, *Quarto Nonarum Januarii*; *Quarto* agreeing with *die*, and *Nonarum* governed by *die* under-

---

How many ways had the Romans of expressing that part of a sentence where a date was mentioned? Explain the first.

With what does the adjective *Quarto* agree? What part of speech is *Januarias*, and with what does it agree?

Explain the second way, the third, and the fourth; at the same time show by what each word is governed, or with what it agrees.



stood, and *Januarii* governed by *Nonarum*. Sometimes there is a *fourth* way of expressing it, by the nominative case; as, *Calendæ Januariæ*; *Januariæ* is an adjective agreeing with *Calendæ*, a noun in the nominative plural; or, as in the second instance above, by the genitive case *Calendæ Januarii*. So *Nonæ Januariæ*, or *Januarii*, &c. *Fifthly*, by the ablative case; as, *Calendis Januariis*, and *Nonis Aprilibus*; here *Calendis* and *Nonis* are nouns in the ablative case, and *Januariis* and *Aprilibus* adjectives agreeing with them.

## EXAMPLES

*To be construed for the further illustration of the Roman Calendar.*

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 1. Nonis Aprilibus.  | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 2. Calendis Januariis.   | <i>Plin.</i> |
| 3. Calendis Octobribus.  | <i>Cic.</i>  |
| 4. Mariusque, Calendis Januariis, magnâ gloriâ consul triumphavit. | <i>Sal.</i>  |

1. *Nonis Aprilibus*, on the Nones of, or belonging to April, or on the 5th of April.

2. *Calendis Januariis*, on the Calends of January, or on the 1st of January. See Table, Col. I.

3. *Calendis Octobribus*, on the Calends of, or belonging to October, or on the 1st of October. See Col. III.

4. *Que Marius consul magnâ gloriâ triumphavit Cal. Jan.*, on the 1st of January. See Table, Col. I.

5. His rebus gestis Idibus Jan. *Cæs.*
6. Nonæ Decembres. *Cic.*
7. Idus Martiæ consolantur. *Cic.*
8. Romulus urbem exiguam in Palatino monte constituit, undecimo Calendas Maias. *Eut.*
9. Pugnatum est sexto Idus Martias. *Eut.*
10. Joviānus decessit imperii mense septimo, quarto decimo Calendas Martias. *Eut.*
11. Circiter Cal. Jun. *Sal.*
12. Rursus in Nonas Februarias consilium cædis transtulerant. *Sal.*

5. *His, &c. Idibus Januariis, or Januarii.* On the 13th of January. See Table, Col. I.

6. Sometimes the nominative case is used instead of the ablative; as *Nonæ Decembres*, the Nones of December, or the 5th of December. See Table, Col. I. *Nonæ* nom. pl. *Decembres*, adj. nom. pl.

7. *Idus Martiæ, &c.* The Ides of March, or 15th of March. See Table, Col. III.

8. The names of the months are also used as adjectives in the following examples. The Ellipsis supplied, in this instance, it will be *Undecimo (die ante) Calendas Maias*, the 11th of the Calends of May, which in the Table, Col. II, is the 21st of April. *Maias* adj. ac. pl.

9. *Sexto (die ante) Idus Martias*, the 10th of March. See Table, Col. III.

10. *Quarto decimo (die ante) Calendas Martias*, the 16th of February. See Table, Col. IV.

11. *Circiter Calendas Junias*, about the 1st of June. See Table, Col. II. *Junias* adj. ac. pl.

12. *In Nonas Februarias*, the 5th of February. See Table, Col. IV.

13. Is dies erat a. d. V. Cal. Apr. *Cæs.*  
 14. Æmilius Paulus tertio Nonas Septembris dimicāvit. *Eut.*  
 15. Atticus pridie Cal. Apr. decessit. *Nep.*  
 16. Ipse navem conscendit a. d. VI. Cal. Jan. *Cæs.*  
 17. Hæc S. C. perscribuntur a. d. VII. Id. Januarii. *Cæs.*  
 18. Cæsar pridie Cal. Januarii ab oppido Bibracte profiscitur. *Cæs.*  
 19. Cæsar a. d. III. Non. Jan. castra movet. *Cæs.*  
 20. Servi transfugerunt a. d. III. Nonarum Martii. *Cæs.*

13. The names of the months are used as nouns in the following examples : *ante diem quintum Calendarum Aprilis*, the 28th of March. See Table, Col. III.

14. *Tertio (die ante) Nonas Septembris*, the 3d of September. See Table, Col. II.

15. *Pridie Calendarum Aprilis*, in Table, Col. III, the 31st of March. *Aprilis*, g. s.

16. *Ante diem sextum Calendarum Januarii*, in Table, Col. I, the 27th of December.

17. *Hæc consultâ senatûs perscribuntur ante diem septimum Iduum Januarii*. In Table, Col. I, the 7th of January.

18. *Pridie Calendarum Januarii*, in Table, Col. I, the 31st of December.

19. *Ante diem tertium Nonarum Januarii*, in Table, Col. I, the 3d of January.

20. *Ante diem tertium Nonarum Martii*, in Table, Col. III, the 5th of March.

21. A. d. VII. Id. Mart. Brundisium veni.  
*Cæs.*

21. *Ante diem septimum Iduum Martii*, in Table, Col. III, the 9th of March.

---

*The Roman Date being given, to find the English Time without referring to the Table.*

### RULE.

In the Nones and Ides, take the given date from one more than the day of the month, on which the Nones and Ides happen; and, in the Calends, take the given date from two more than the number of days in the *preceding* month, and the remainder will be the English time.

Example I.—*What is the English date answering to V. Id. Jan. ?*

In January, the Ides are on the 13th; one more makes 14, from which 5, the given date, being taken, leaves the 9th of January, the English date required.

Example II.—*What is the English date answering to VIII. Cal. Feb. ?*

The preceding month is January, in which there are

---

When the Roman date is given, how do you find the



31 days ; 2 added make 33, from which 8 must be taken, and the remainder will be 25 ; so that the 25th of January will be the English time.

---

*The English Date being given, to find the Roman time without the use of the Table.*

### RULE.

The same as the preceding ; but in the Calends take the given date from two more than the number of days in the *same month*, and the remainder will be the Calends of the *following* month.

Example I.—*What is the Roman date answering to February 3d ?*

In February the Nones are on the 5th, one more makes 6, from which if 3 be taken, the remainder will be 3 ; so that 3, or III. Non. Feb. is the Roman date.

Example II.—*What is the Roman date answering to April 20th ?*

In April there are 30 days, 2 more will make 32 ; from which if you take 20, the remainder will be 12 ; and because May follows April, it will be XII. Cal. Ma. the Roman date.

---

English time ? Explain the Examples for Nones and Ides. For Calends.

When the English date is given, will the preceding rule find the Roman date in Nones and Ides ? Give examples. What is the rule for finding the Calends answering to the English date ? Give several examples.

Example III. — *What is the Roman date answering to February 15th ?*

There are 28 days in February, 2 more make 30, from which, when the given date 15 is taken, the remainder will be 15; and because March follows February, it will be XV. Cal. Mar.

*The Division of the Day and Night among the Romans.*

The *dies naturālis*, or the natural day of the Romans, was from the rising to the setting of the sun. They divided the day, at all seasons of the year, into twelve equal parts, called *horæ*, hours. The Roman hours, therefore, would be much longer in summer than in winter; and the only hour, which would exactly correspond with our time, throughout the year, would be our 12 o'clock, or noon: the Romans called this, *hora sexta*, the sixth hour, because they did not number their hours from mid-day, as we do; but began at sunrise, and counted 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, &c. to the 12th hour, the setting of the sun.

At the equinoxes, that is on the 21st of

---

How did the Romans divide the day? What did they call our 12 o'clock? From what did they calculate?

March, and 23d of September, the Roman hours would exactly answer to our own, in the following manner.

Roman, I, II, III, IV, V, VI.—VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, XII.

English, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.—1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

Morning.

Afternoon.

The first hour was called *prima hora*, about our 7 o'clock; *secunda hora*, the second hour, about our 8 o'clock; *tertia hora*, the third hour, about our 9 o'clock, &c. Thus the Romans numbered their hours to *sexta hora*, or the sixth hour, which was exactly our 12 o'clock; *septima hora*, the seventh hour, about our 1 o'clock, and thus proceeding to *undecima hora*, the eleventh hour, about our 5 or 6 o'clock; and *duodecima hora*, the twelfth hour, about our 6 or 7 o'clock, according to the time of the sun's setting.

The night was divided in the same manner. After the twelve hours of the day, the first hour of the night began: *prima hora noctis*, the first hour of the night, about our 7 o'clock; *secunda hora*, &c. to *sexta hora noctis*, the sixth hour of the night, answering

---

What was *Prima hora*?

How was the night divided? To what did the Roman *Secunda hora noctis* answer, &c.?

exactly to our 12 o'clock, or mid-night. *Septima hora*, the seventh hour, or 1 o'clock in the morning, calculating in the same manner to *duodecima hora noctis*, the twelfth hour of the night, about our 6 o'clock in the morning.

The night was also divided into four watches, each consisting of three hours, which were of different lengths, at different times of the year, according to the hour when the day closed. When the night began at 6 o'clock, from that time to 9 o'clock was the *first* watch, called *vigilia prima*; the *second* watch, *vigilia secunda*, was from 9 to 12 o'clock; the *third*, *vigilia tertia*, from 12 to 3 o'clock, and the *fourth*, *vigilia quarta*, from 3 to 6 o'clock in the morning.

### *Examples for Construing.*

1. Quartâ vix demùm exponimur horâ.

*Hor.*

2. Ad horam IX in anchöris expectavit.

*Cæs.*

1. *Exponimur*, we are set on shore, *quartâ horâ*, at 10 o'clock. 2. *Ad nonam horam*, to 3 o'clock. 3. *Ab*

---

The Romans divided the night into how many watches? What was the first called? The second, &c.?



3. Ab horâ IV usquè ad solis occāsum.

*Cæs.*

4. Philippus, ab officiis octāvam circīter horam, redit.

*Hor.*

5. Horâ circīter III ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior est factus.

*Cæs.*

6. Acceptis litēris circīter horâ XI diēi.

*Cæs.*

7. Post horam IX diēi Cæsar pervēnit.

*Cæs.*

8. Horâ circīter VI ejusdem diēi.

*Cæs.*

9. Ab horâ diēi quintâ usquè ad solis occāsum.

*Cæs.*

10. A mane usquè ad horam X diēi.

*Cæs.*

11. Postērâ die, circīter horam tertiam pervēnit.

*Sal.*

12. Luterius, horâ noctis circīter X, sylvestribus angustisque itineribus frumentum importāre in oppidum instituit.

*Cæs.*

*quartâ horâ*, from 10 o'clock. 4. *Circīter octavam horam*, about 2 o'clock. 5. *Circīter tertiâ horâ*, about 9 o'clock, *factus est certior*, he is made more certain, or he is informed. 6. *Circīter undecimâ horâ diēi*, about 5 o'clock in the evening. 7. *Post nonam horam*, after 3 o'clock. 8. *Circīter sextâ horâ*, about 12 o'clock. 11. *Die* is here feminine. 12. *Circīter decimâ horâ noctis*, about 4 o'clock in the morning. *Sylvestribus* que

13. Noctis horâ primâ omnes suos ad unum in castris incolũmes reduxit. *Cæs.*

14. Cũm puer tuus ad me secundâ ferè vigiliâ venisset. *Cic.*

15. Tertiâ ferè vigiliâ exactâ. *Cic.*

*angustis itineribus*, by woody and narrow roads. 13. *Primâ horâ noctis*, 7 o'clock at night. 14. *Ferè secundâ vigiliâ*, almost in the second watch, or near 12 o'clock. 15. *Ferè tertiâ vigiliâ exactâ*, almost the third watch being passed, or it being almost 3 o'clock in the morning.

THE END.





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: July 2006

**PreservationTechnologies**  
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111





